

**UNITED STATES
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION**

Washington, D.C. 20549

FORM S-3

REGISTRATION STATEMENT

UNDER

THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933

Aptevo Therapeutics Inc.

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

Delaware

81-1567056

(State or other jurisdiction of incorporation or organization)

(I.R.S. Employer Identification Number)

2401 4th Avenue, Suite 1050
Seattle, WA 98121
(206) 838-0500

(Address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of registrant's principal executive offices)

Marvin L. White
President and Chief Executive Officer
Aptevo Therapeutics Inc.
2401 4th Avenue, Suite 1050
Seattle, WA 98121
(206) 838-0500

(Name, address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of agent for service)

Copies to:
Carl A. Valenstein
Sean M. Donahue
Morgan, Lewis & Bockius LLP
One Federal Street
Boston, MA 02110
(617) 341-7700

Approximate date of commencement of proposed sale to the public: From time to time after this Registration Statement becomes effective.

If the only securities being registered on this Form are being offered pursuant to dividend or interest reinvestment plans, please check the following box:

If any of the securities being registered on this Form are to be offered on a delayed or continuous basis pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act of 1933, other than securities offered only in connection with dividend or interest reinvestment plans, check the following box:

If this Form is filed to register additional securities for an offering pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act, please check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this Form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(c) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this Form is a registration statement pursuant to General Instruction I.D. or a post-effective amendment thereto that shall become effective upon filing with the Commission pursuant to Rule 462(e) under the Securities Act, check the following box.

If this Form is a post-effective amendment to a registration statement filed pursuant to General Instruction I.D. filed to register additional securities or additional classes of securities pursuant to Rule 413(b) under the Securities Act, check the following box.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, a smaller reporting company, or an emerging growth company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer," "smaller reporting company" and "emerging growth company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large accelerated filer
Non-accelerated filer

Accelerated filer
Smaller reporting company
Emerging growth company

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 7(a)(2)(B) of Securities Act.

CALCULATION OF REGISTRATION FEE

Title of Each Class of Securities to be Registered	Amount to be Registered	Proposed Maximum Offering Price Per Unit	Proposed Maximum Aggregate Offering Price	Amount of Registration Fee (1)
Common Stock, par value \$0.001 per share	(2)	(3)	(3)	—
Preferred Stock, par value \$0.001 per share	(2)	(3)	(3)	—
Debt Securities	(2)	(3)	(3)	—
Warrants	(2)	(3)	(3)	—
Total	(2)	—	\$200,000,000	\$7,871.86(4)

- (1) Calculated pursuant to Rule 457(o) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “Securities Act”).
- (2) There are being registered hereunder such indeterminate number of shares of common stock and preferred stock, such indeterminate principal amount of debt securities, and such indeterminate number of warrants to purchase common stock, preferred stock and/or debt securities as may be sold by the Registrant from time to time, which together shall have an aggregate initial offering price not to exceed \$200,000,000. If any debt securities are issued at an original issue discount, then the offering price of such debt securities shall be in such greater principal amount as shall result in an aggregate offering price not to exceed \$200,000,000, less the aggregate dollar amount of all securities previously issued hereunder. Any securities registered hereunder may be sold separately or in combination with other securities registered hereunder. The proposed maximum offering price of the securities will be determined, from time to time, by the Registrant in connection with the issuance by the Registrant of the securities registered hereunder. The securities registered hereunder also include such indeterminate number of shares of common stock and preferred stock and amount of debt securities as may be issued upon conversion of or exchange for preferred stock or debt securities that provide for conversion or exchange, upon exercise of warrants or pursuant to the antidilution provisions of any of such securities. In addition, pursuant to Rule 416 under the Securities Act, the shares being registered hereunder include such indeterminate number of shares of common stock and preferred stock as may be issuable with respect to the shares being registered hereunder as a result of stock splits, stock dividends or similar transactions.
- (3) The proposed maximum aggregate offering price per class of security will be determined from time to time by the Registrant in connection with the issuance by the Registrant of the securities registered hereunder and is not specified as to each class of security pursuant to General Instruction II.D. of Form S-3 under the Securities Act.
- (4) Pursuant to Rule 415(a)(6) under the Securities Act, the securities registered pursuant to this registration statement include unsold securities previously registered by the Registrant on the Registrant’s registration statement (File No. 333-221499) filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “SEC”) on November 13, 2017, amended on December 6, 2017 and declared effective on December 15, 2017 (the “Prior Registration Statement”). The Prior Registration Statement registered the offer and sale of an indeterminate number of shares of common stock and preferred stock, an indeterminate principal amount of debt securities and an indeterminate number of warrants to purchase common stock, preferred stock and/or debt securities, having an aggregate initial offering price of \$150,000,000, of which an aggregate of \$127,847,300 remains unsold as of the date of filing of this registration statement (the “Unsold Securities”), which the Registrant has determined to include in this registration statement. The Registrant paid a filing fee of approximately \$15,917 (calculated at the prior filing fee rate) relating to the Unsold Securities under the Prior Registration Statement, and no additional filing fee is due with respect to the Unsold Securities in connection with the filing of this registration statement. The Registrant is also registering new securities on this registration statement with an aggregate initial offering price of \$72,152,700 (the “New Securities”), which aggregate offering price is not specified as to each class of security. To the extent that, after the filing date hereof and prior to the effectiveness of this registration statement, the Registrant sells any Unsold Securities pursuant to the Prior Registration Statement, the Registrant will identify in a pre-effective amendment to this registration statement the updated amount of Unsold Securities from the Prior Registration Statement to be included in this registration statement pursuant to Rule 415(a)(6) and the updated amount of New Securities to be registered on this registration statement. Pursuant to Rule 415(a)(6) under the Securities Act, the offering of the Unsold Securities under the Prior Registration Statement will be deemed terminated as of the date of effectiveness of this registration statement.

The Registrant hereby amends this registration statement on such date or dates as may be necessary to delay its effective date until the Registrant shall file a further amendment that specifically states that this registration statement shall thereafter become effective in accordance with Section 8(a) of the Securities Act, or until this registration statement shall become effective on such date as the SEC, acting pursuant to said Section 8(a), may determine.

EXPLANATORY NOTE

This registration statement contains:

- a base prospectus covering the offering, issuance and sale by us of up to \$200,000,000 in the aggregate of the securities identified above from time to time in one or more offerings; and
- an equity distribution agreement prospectus covering the offering, issuance and sale by us of up to a maximum aggregate offering price of \$50,000,000 of our common stock that may be issued and sold under an equity distribution agreement, or the Equity Distribution Agreement, with Piper Sandler & Co.

The base prospectus immediately follows this explanatory note. The specific terms of any securities to be offered pursuant to the base prospectus will be specified in a prospectus supplement to the base prospectus. The equity distribution agreement prospectus immediately follows the base prospectus. The \$50,000,000 of common stock that may be offered, issued and sold by us under the equity distribution agreement prospectus is included in the \$200,000,000 of securities that may be offered, issued and sold by us under the base prospectus. Upon termination of the Equity Distribution Agreement, any portion of the \$50,000,000 included in the equity distribution agreement prospectus that is not sold pursuant to the Equity Distribution Agreement will be available for sale in other offerings pursuant to the base prospectus and a corresponding prospectus supplement, and if no shares are sold under the Equity Distribution Agreement, the full \$50,000,000 of securities may be sold in other offerings pursuant to the base prospectus and a prospectus supplement.

The information contained in this prospectus is not complete and may be changed. These securities may not be sold until the registration statement filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission is effective. This prospectus is not an offer to sell these securities and is not soliciting an offer to buy these securities in any jurisdiction where the offer or sale is not permitted.

Subject to Completion, Dated December 14, 2020

PROSPECTUS

\$200,000,000



**Common Stock
Preferred Stock
Debt Securities
Warrants**

We may, from time to time, offer and sell up to \$200,000,000 of any combination of our common stock, preferred stock, debt securities or warrants described in this prospectus, either individually or in combination with other securities, at prices and on terms described in one or more supplements to this prospectus. We may also offer common stock or preferred stock upon conversion of debt securities, common stock upon conversion of preferred stock, or common stock, preferred stock or debt securities upon the exercise of warrants. We may also authorize one or more free writing prospectuses to be provided to you in connection with these offerings.

This prospectus describes some of the general terms that may apply to an offering of our securities. We will provide the specific terms of these offerings and securities in one or more supplements to this prospectus. We may also authorize one or more free writing prospectuses to be provided to you in connection with these offerings. The prospectus supplement and any related free writing prospectus may also add, update or change information contained or incorporated by reference in this prospectus. You should carefully read this prospectus, the applicable prospectus supplement and any related free writing prospectus, as well as the documents incorporated by reference herein and therein, before buying any of the securities being offered. **This prospectus may not be used to offer and sell securities unless accompanied by a prospectus supplement.**

Securities may be sold by us to or through underwriters or dealers, directly to purchasers or through agents designated from time to time. For additional information on the methods of sale, you should refer to the section entitled "Plan of Distribution" in this prospectus and in the applicable prospectus supplement. If any underwriters are involved in the sale of any securities with respect to which this prospectus is being delivered, the names of such underwriters and any applicable discounts or commissions and over-allotment options will be set forth in a prospectus supplement. The price to the public of such securities and the net proceeds we expect to receive from such sale will also be set forth in a prospectus supplement.

Our common stock is listed on the Nasdaq Capital Market under the symbol "APVO." On December 11, 2020, the last reported sale price of our common stock on the Nasdaq Capital Market was \$44.04 per share.

Investing in our securities involves a high degree of risk. You should review carefully the risks and uncertainties described under the heading "Risk Factors" on page 6 of this prospectus and under similar headings in the applicable prospectus supplement, any free writing prospectuses we have authorized for use in connection with a specific offering and in the documents incorporated by reference herein and therein.

Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or determined if this prospectus is truthful or complete. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.

The date of this prospectus is .

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>Page</u>
About this Prospectus	i
Summary	1
The Securities We May Offer	3
Risk Factors	6
Forward-Looking Statements	7
Use of Proceeds	8
Description of Capital Stock	9
Description of Debt Securities	15
Description of Warrants	21
Legal Ownership of Securities	23
Plan of Distribution	26
Legal Matters	28
Experts	28
Where You Can Find More Information	28
Incorporation of Certain Information by Reference	29

ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS

This prospectus is part of a registration statement on Form S-3 that we filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission, or the SEC, using a “shelf” registration process. Under this shelf registration statement, we may sell from time to time in one or more offerings up to a total dollar amount of \$200,000,000 of common stock, preferred stock, various series of debt securities and/or warrants to purchase any of such securities, either individually or in combination with other securities as described in this prospectus. Each time we sell any type or series of securities under this prospectus, we will provide a prospectus supplement that will contain more specific information about the terms of that offering. We may also authorize one or more free writing prospectuses to be provided to you that may contain material information relating to these offerings. A prospectus supplement and any related free writing prospectus may also add, update or change the information contained or incorporated by reference in this prospectus. This prospectus, together with the applicable prospectus supplement, any related free writing prospectus and the documents incorporated by reference herein and therein, will include all material information relating to the applicable offering. Before buying any of the securities being offered, we urge you to carefully read this prospectus, the applicable prospectus supplement and any related free writing prospectus, together with the additional information incorporated herein by reference as described under the section entitled “Where You Can Find More Information.”

THIS PROSPECTUS MAY NOT BE USED TO CONSUMMATE A SALE OF SECURITIES UNLESS IT IS ACCOMPANIED BY A PROSPECTUS SUPPLEMENT.

You should rely only on the information contained or incorporated by reference in this prospectus and the applicable prospectus supplement, along with the information contained in any free writing prospectuses we have authorized for use in connection with a specific offering. We have not authorized anyone to provide you with different information. We are not making an offer to sell or seeking an offer to buy securities under this prospectus or the applicable prospectus supplement and any related free writing prospectus in any jurisdiction where the offer or sale is not permitted. The information contained in this prospectus, the applicable prospectus supplement, any related free writing prospectus and the documents incorporated by reference herein and therein are accurate only as of their respective dates, regardless of the time of delivery of this prospectus, the applicable prospectus supplement or any related free writing prospectus, or the time of any sale of a security.

This prospectus contains summaries of certain provisions contained in some of the documents described herein, but reference is made to the actual documents for complete information. All of the summaries are qualified in their entirety by the actual documents. Copies of some of the documents referred to herein have been filed, will be filed or will be incorporated by reference as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part, and you may obtain copies of those documents as described below under the section entitled “Where You Can Find More Information.”

Except as otherwise indicated herein or as the context otherwise requires, references in this prospectus to “Aptevo,” “the Company,” “we,” “us,” “our” and similar references refer to Aptevo Therapeutics Inc., a corporation under the laws of the State of Delaware.

This prospectus and the information incorporated by reference herein include trademarks, service marks and trade names owned by us or other companies. All trademarks, service marks and trade names included or incorporated by reference in this prospectus, any applicable prospectus supplement or any related free writing prospectus are the property of their respective owners.

SUMMARY

The following summary highlights information contained elsewhere in this prospectus or incorporated by reference herein and does not contain all the information that may be important to purchasers of our securities. Prospective purchasers of our securities should carefully read this entire prospectus, the applicable prospectus supplement and any related free writing prospectus, including the risks of investing in our securities discussed under the heading "Risk Factors" herein and under similar headings in the applicable prospectus supplement, any related free writing prospectus and the documents incorporated by reference herein and therein. Prospective purchasers of our securities should also carefully read the information incorporated by reference in this prospectus, including our financial statements, and the exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part.

Overview

We are a clinical-stage, research and development biotechnology company focused on developing novel immunotherapeutic candidates for the treatment of cancer. Our lead clinical candidate, APVO436, and preclinical candidates, ALG.APV-527 and APVO603, were developed using our ADAPTIR™ modular protein technology platform. Our preclinical candidate APVO442 was developed using our ADAPTIR-FLEX™ modular protein technology platform.

The versatile and robust ADAPTIR and ADAPTIR-FLEX platforms are designed to generate monospecific, bispecific and multispecific antibody candidates. ADAPTIR and ADAPTIR-FLEX are both modular platforms, which gives us the flexibility to generate immunotherapeutic candidates designed for utilizing a variety of mechanisms of action. This flexibility in design allows us to potentially generate novel therapeutic candidates designed for the treatment of different types of cancer and autoimmune diseases. We have numerous investigational-stage product candidates based on our ADAPTIR platform. The ADAPTIR platform technology is designed to generate monospecific and bispecific immunotherapeutic proteins that specifically bind to one or more targets, for example, bispecific therapeutic molecules, which may have structural and functional advantages over monoclonal antibodies. The structural differences of ADAPTIR molecules over monoclonal antibodies allow for the development of ADAPTIR immunotherapeutics that are designed to engage immune effector cells and disease targets in a novel manner to produce unique signaling responses and ultimately kill tumors or modulate the immune system to kill tumors.

ADAPTIR-FLEX can be used to potentially generate immunotherapeutic candidates that are designed to have modified affinity and valency to a target, which has the potential to improve specificity, tumor targeting and therapeutic benefit with application to multiple hematologic and solid tumors. ADAPTIR-FLEX utilizes the same IgG-backbone and linkers found in ADAPTIR, but in a heterodimeric format, while potentially retaining good manufacturability attributes and an extended half-life that may enable improved dosing regimens in clinical development.

We are skilled at product candidate generation, validation and subsequent preclinical and clinical development using the ADAPTIR and ADAPTIR-FLEX platforms. We are developing our ADAPTIR molecules by way of our protein engineering, preclinical development and process development capabilities and clinical development capabilities.

Company Information

On August 6, 2015, Emergent BioSolutions Inc., or Emergent, announced a plan to separate into two independent publicly traded companies. To accomplish this separation, Emergent created Aptevo to be the parent company for the development-based biotechnology business focused on novel oncology and hematology therapeutics. Aptevo was incorporated in Delaware in February 2016 as a wholly owned subsidiary of Emergent. To effect the separation, Emergent made a pro rata distribution of Aptevo's common stock to Emergent's stockholders on August 1, 2016.

In March 2020, we effected a reverse stock-split whereby every 14 shares of our common stock issued and outstanding as of March 26, 2020 were automatically combined into one issued and outstanding share of our common stock. Our common stock currently trades on the Nasdaq Capital Market under the symbol "APVO." Our primary executive offices are located at 2401 4th Avenue, Suite 1050, Seattle, Washington and our telephone

number is (206) 838-0500. Our website address is www.aptevotherapeutics.com. The information contained in, or that can be accessed through, our website is not a part of or incorporated by reference in this prospectus, and you should not consider it part of this prospectus or part of any prospectus supplement.

Risks Associated with our Business

Our business is subject to numerous risks, as described under the heading “Risk Factors” and under similar headings in the applicable prospectus supplement, any related free writing prospectus and the documents incorporated by reference herein and therein.

THE SECURITIES WE MAY OFFER

We may offer shares of our common stock and preferred stock, various series of debt securities and/or warrants to purchase any of such securities, either individually or in combination with other securities, with a total value of up to \$200,000,000 from time to time under this prospectus at prices and on terms to be determined at the time of any offering. This prospectus provides you with a general description of the securities we may offer. Each time we offer a type or series of securities under this prospectus, we will provide a prospectus supplement to this prospectus that will describe the specific amounts, prices and other important terms of the securities, including, to the extent applicable:

- designation or classification;
- aggregate principal amount or aggregate offering price;
- maturity;
- original issue discount;
- rates and times of payment of interest or dividends;
- redemption, conversion, exercise, exchange or sinking fund terms;
- ranking;
- restrictive covenants;
- voting or other rights;
- conversion or exchange prices or rates and, if applicable, any provisions for changes to or adjustments in the conversion or exchange prices or rates and in the securities or other property receivable upon conversion or exchange; and
- a discussion of material U.S. federal income tax considerations, if any.

The prospectus supplement and any related free writing prospectus that we may authorize to be provided to you may also add, update or change information contained or incorporated by reference in this prospectus. However, no prospectus supplement or free writing prospectus will offer a security that is not registered and described in this prospectus at the time of the effectiveness of the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part.

This prospectus may not be used to consummate a sale of securities unless it is accompanied by a prospectus supplement.

We may sell the securities directly to investors or to or through agents, underwriters or dealers. We, and our agents, underwriters or dealers reserve the right to accept or reject all or part of any proposed purchase of securities. If we do offer securities to or through agents, underwriters or dealers, we will include in the applicable prospectus supplement:

- the names of those agents, underwriters or dealers;
- applicable fees, discounts and commissions to be paid to them;
- details regarding over-allotment options, if any; and
- the net proceeds to us.

Common Stock.

We may issue shares of our common stock from time to time. Each holder of our common stock is entitled to one vote for each share on all matters submitted to a vote of the stockholders, including the election of directors. Under our amended and restated certificate of incorporation, or certificate of incorporation, and amended and restated bylaws, or bylaws, our stockholders do not have cumulative voting rights. Because of this, the holders of a majority of the shares of common stock entitled to vote in any election of directors can elect all of the directors standing for election, if they should so choose. Subject to preferences that may be applicable to any then-outstanding preferred stock, holders of common stock are entitled to receive ratably those dividends, if any, as may be declared from time to time by our board of directors out of legally available funds. In the event of our liquidation, dissolution or

winding up, holders of common stock are entitled to share ratably in the net assets legally available for distribution to stockholders after the payment of all of our debts and other liabilities and the satisfaction of any liquidation preference granted to the holders of any then-outstanding shares of preferred stock. Holders of common stock have no preemptive, conversion or subscription rights and there are no redemption or sinking fund provisions applicable to the common stock. The rights, preferences and privileges of the holders of common stock are subject to, and may be adversely affected by, the rights of the holders of shares of any series of preferred stock that we may designate in the future.

Preferred Stock.

We may issue shares of our preferred stock from time to time, in one or more series. Our board of directors will determine the designations, voting powers, preferences and rights of the preferred stock, as well as the qualifications, limitations or restrictions thereof, including dividend rights, conversion rights, preemptive rights, terms of redemption or repurchase, liquidation preferences, sinking fund terms and the number of shares constituting any series or the designation of any series. Convertible preferred stock will be convertible into our common stock or exchangeable for other securities. Conversion may be mandatory or at your option and would be at prescribed conversion rates.

If we sell any series of preferred stock under this prospectus, we will fix the designations, voting powers, preferences and rights of such series of preferred stock, as well as the qualifications, limitations or restrictions thereof, in the certificate of designation relating to that series. We will file as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part, or will incorporate by reference from reports that we file with the SEC, the form of any certificate of designation that describes the terms of the series of preferred stock that we are offering before the issuance of the related series of preferred stock. We urge you to read the applicable prospectus supplement (and any free writing prospectus that we may authorize to be provided to you) related to the series of preferred stock being offered, as well as the complete certificate of designation that contains the terms of the applicable series of preferred stock.

Debt Securities.

We may issue debt securities from time to time, in one or more series, as either senior or subordinated debt or as senior or subordinated convertible debt. The senior debt securities will rank equally with any other unsecured and unsubordinated debt. The subordinated debt securities will be subordinate and junior in right of payment, to the extent and in the manner described in the instrument governing the debt, to all of our senior indebtedness. Convertible debt securities will be convertible into or exchangeable for our common stock or other securities. Conversion may be mandatory or at your option and would be at prescribed conversion rates.

Any debt securities issued under this prospectus will be issued under one or more documents called indentures, which are contracts between us and a national banking association or other eligible party, as trustee. In this prospectus, we have summarized certain general features of the debt securities. We urge you, however, to read the applicable prospectus supplement (and any free writing prospectus that we may authorize to be provided to you) related to the series of debt securities being offered, as well as the complete indentures that contain the terms of the debt securities. A form of indenture has been filed as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part, and supplemental indentures and forms of debt securities containing the terms of the debt securities being offered will be filed as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part or will be incorporated by reference from reports that we file with the SEC.

Warrants.

We may issue warrants for the purchase of common stock, preferred stock and/or debt securities in one or more series. We may issue warrants independently or together with common stock, preferred stock and/or debt securities, and the warrants may be attached to or separate from these securities. In this prospectus, we have summarized certain general features of the warrants. We urge you, however, to read the applicable prospectus supplement (and any free writing prospectus that we may authorize to be provided to you) related to the series of warrants being offered, as well as any warrant agreements and warrant certificates that contain the terms of the warrants. We have filed forms of the warrant agreements and forms of warrant certificates containing the terms of the warrants that may be offered as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part. We will file as exhibits to the

registration statement of which this prospectus is a part, or will incorporate by reference from reports that we file with the SEC, the form of warrant and/or the warrant agreement and warrant certificate, as applicable, that contain the terms of the particular series of warrants we are offering, and any supplemental agreements, before the issuance of such warrants.

Any warrants issued under this prospectus may be evidenced by warrant certificates. Warrants also may be issued under an applicable warrant agreement that we enter into with a warrant agent. We will indicate the name and address of the warrant agent, if applicable, in the prospectus supplement relating to the particular series of warrants being offered.

RISK FACTORS

Investing in our securities involves a high degree of risk. Before deciding whether to invest in our securities, you should consider carefully the risks and uncertainties described in the applicable prospectus supplement, any related free writing prospectus and the documents incorporated by reference therein (including our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K and our Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q, as well as any amendments thereto reflected in subsequent filings with the SEC), together with other information contained and incorporated by reference in the foregoing. The risks described in these documents are not the only ones we face, but those that we consider to be material. There may be other unknown or unpredictable economic, business, competitive, regulatory or other factors that could have material adverse effects on our future results. Past financial performance may not be a reliable indicator of future performance, and historical trends should not be used to anticipate results or trends in future periods. If any of these risks actually occurs, our business, financial condition, results of operations or cash flow could be seriously harmed. This could cause the trading price of our common stock to decline, resulting in a loss of all or part of your investment. Please also read carefully the section below entitled “Forward-Looking Statements.”

FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

This prospectus, the applicable prospectus supplement and any free writing prospectus, including the documents we incorporate by reference herein and therein, may contain forward-looking statements, including statements regarding our intentions, beliefs, projections, outlook, analyses or current expectations concerning, among other things, our ongoing and planned preclinical development and clinical trials, the timing of and our ability to make regulatory filings and obtain and maintain regulatory approvals for our product candidates and any future product candidates, our intellectual property position, the degree of clinical utility of our product candidates, particularly in specific patient populations, our ability to develop and commercialize any product candidates, expectations regarding clinical trial data, statements regarding potential royalty and milestone payments, potential partnerships and collaborations, the advancement of our clinical and pre-clinical trials, our goals and milestones, our expectations regarding the size of the patient populations for our product candidates if approved for commercial use, our expectations regarding the effectiveness of our ADAPTIR and ADAPTIR-FLEX platforms, our ability to utilize any net operating losses, statements regarding our ability to rely on our directors' and officers' liability insurance, our results of operations, cash needs, spending of the net proceeds from this offering, financial condition, liquidity, prospects, growth and strategies, the industry in which we operate and the trends that may affect the industry or us. In some cases, you can identify forward-looking statements by terminology such as "believe," "will," "may," "estimate," "continue," "anticipate," "intend," "should," "plan," "might," "approximately," "expect," "predict," "could," "potentially" or the negative of these terms or other similar expressions. Forward-looking statements appear in a number of places throughout this prospectus and include statements regarding our intentions, beliefs, projections, outlook, analyses or current expectations concerning, among other things, our outlook, financial performance or financial condition, our technology and related pipeline, collaboration and partnership opportunities, commercial portfolio, our future growth rates, our ability to timely manufacture its products, spending of the proceeds from this offering, financial condition, liquidity, prospects, growth and strategies, the industry in which we operate and the trends that may affect the industry or us.

Discussions containing these forward-looking statements may be found, among other places, in the sections entitled "Business," "Risk Factors" and "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations" incorporated by reference from our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K and in our Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q, as well as any amendments thereto, filed with the SEC. These statements relate to future events or our future financial performance and involve known and unknown risks, uncertainties and other factors that could cause our actual results, levels of activity, performance or achievement to differ materially from those expressed or implied by these forward-looking statements. These statements reflect our current views with respect to future events and are based on assumptions and subject to risks and uncertainties. Given these uncertainties, you should not place undue reliance on these forward-looking statements. These forward-looking statements represent our estimates and assumptions only as of the date of the document containing the applicable statement and, except as required by law, we undertake no obligation to update or revise publicly any forward-looking statements, whether as a result of new information, future events or otherwise.

USE OF PROCEEDS

We will retain broad discretion over the use of the net proceeds from the sale of the securities offered hereby. Except as described in any prospectus supplement or in any related free writing prospectus that we may authorize to be provided to you, we currently intend to use the net proceeds from the sale of the securities offered by us hereunder primarily for research, development and manufacturing of product candidates, and for other general corporate purposes. Pending these uses, we expect to invest the net proceeds in short-term, interest-bearing securities.

As of the date of this prospectus, we cannot specify with certainty all of the particular uses for the net proceeds to us from the sale of the securities offered by us hereunder. We will set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement or free writing prospectus our intended use for the net proceeds received from the sale of any securities sold pursuant to the prospectus supplement or free writing prospectus.

DESCRIPTION OF CAPITAL STOCK

As of the date of this prospectus, our certificate of incorporation, authorizes us to issue up to 500,000,000 shares of common stock, \$0.001 par value per share, and 15,000,000 shares of preferred stock, \$0.001 par value per share. As of December 11, 2020, 4,378,759 shares of common stock were outstanding and no shares of preferred stock were outstanding.

The following summary describes the material terms of our capital stock. The summary is qualified in its entirety by reference to our certificate of incorporation and our bylaws.

Common Stock

Voting Rights.

Each holder of our common stock is entitled to one vote for each share on all matters submitted to a vote of the stockholders, including the election of directors. Under our certificate of incorporation and bylaws, our stockholders do not have cumulative voting rights. Because of this, the holders of a majority of the shares of common stock entitled to vote in any election of directors can elect all of the directors standing for election, if they should so choose.

Dividends.

Subject to preferences that may be applicable to any then-outstanding preferred stock, holders of common stock are entitled to receive ratably those dividends, if any, as may be declared from time to time by our board of directors out of legally available funds.

Liquidation.

In the event of our liquidation, dissolution or winding up, holders of common stock will be entitled to share ratably in the net assets legally available for distribution to stockholders after the payment of all of our debts and other liabilities and the satisfaction of any liquidation preference granted to the holders of any then-outstanding shares of preferred stock.

Rights and Preferences.

Holders of common stock have no preemptive, conversion or subscription rights and there are no redemption or sinking fund provisions applicable to our common stock. The rights, preferences and privileges of the holders of common stock are subject to, and may be adversely affected by, the rights of the holders of shares of any series of preferred stock that we may designate in the future.

Rights Plan

Each share of common stock includes an associated right pursuant to and as set forth in the Rights Agreement that we entered into with Broadridge Corporate Issuer Solutions, Inc. on November 8, 2020, or the Rights Agreement. Each right initially represents the right to purchase from us one one-thousandth of a share of our Series A Junior Participating Preferred Stock, par value \$0.001 per share. This right is not exercisable until the occurrence of certain events specified in such Rights Agreement. The value attributable to these rights, if any, is reflected in the value of our common stock. The Rights and the Rights Agreement will expire upon the earliest to occur of (i) the date on which all of the Rights are redeemed, (ii) the date on which the Rights are exchanged, and (iii) the close of business on November 8, 2021.

Fully Paid and Nonassessable.

All of our outstanding shares of common stock are fully paid and nonassessable.

Preferred Stock

Under our certificate of incorporation, our board of directors is authorized by resolution to divide the preferred stock into one or more series and, with respect to each series, to determine the designations, powers, preferences, rights, qualifications, limitations and restrictions thereof, including the dividend rights, conversion or exchange rights, voting rights, redemption rights and terms, liquidation preferences, sinking fund provisions and the number of shares

constituting the series. Our board of directors can, without stockholder approval but subject to the terms of our certificate of incorporation, issue preferred stock with voting and other rights that could adversely affect the voting power of the holders of our common stock and which could have certain anti-takeover effects. Before we may issue any series of preferred stock, our board of directors will be required to adopt resolutions creating and designating such series of preferred stock.

The following summary of terms of our preferred stock is not complete. You should refer to the provisions of our certificate of incorporation, our bylaws and the resolutions containing the terms of each series of preferred stock, which have been or will be filed with the SEC at or prior to the time of issuance of such series and described in the applicable prospectus supplement. The applicable prospectus supplement may also state that any of the terms set forth herein are inapplicable to such series of preferred stock, provided that the information set forth in such prospectus supplement does not constitute a material change to the information herein such that it alters the nature of the offering or the securities being offered.

We will fix the designations, voting powers, preferences and rights of each series of preferred stock that we issue under this prospectus, as well as the qualifications, limitations or restrictions thereof, in the certificate of designation relating to that series. We will file as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part, or will incorporate by reference herein from reports that we file with the SEC, the form of any certificate of designation that describes the terms of the series of preferred stock we are offering. We will describe in the applicable prospectus supplement the terms of the series of preferred stock being offered, including, to the extent applicable:

- the title and stated value;
- the number of shares we are offering;
- the liquidation preference per share;
- the purchase price;
- the dividend rate, period and payment date and method of calculation for dividends;
- whether dividends will be cumulative or non-cumulative and, if cumulative, the date from which dividends will accumulate;
- the procedures for any auction and remarketing;
- the provisions for a sinking fund;
- the provisions for redemption or repurchase, if applicable, and any restrictions on our ability to exercise those redemption and repurchase rights;
- any listing of the preferred stock on any securities exchange or market;
- whether the preferred stock will be convertible into our common stock, and, if applicable, the conversion price, or how it will be calculated, and the conversion period;
- whether the preferred stock will be exchangeable into debt securities, and, if applicable, the exchange price, or how it will be calculated, and the exchange period;
- voting rights of the preferred stock;
- preemptive rights;
- restrictions on transfer, sale or other assignment;
- whether interests in the preferred stock will be represented by depositary shares;
- a discussion of material United States federal income tax considerations applicable to the preferred stock;
- the relative ranking and preferences of the preferred stock as to dividend rights and rights if we liquidate, dissolve or wind up our affairs;
- any limitations on the issuance of any class or series of preferred stock ranking senior to or on a parity with the series of preferred stock as to dividend rights and rights if we liquidate, dissolve or wind up our affairs; and
- any other specific terms, preferences, rights or limitations of, or restrictions on, the preferred stock.

If we issue shares of preferred stock under this prospectus, the shares will be fully paid and non-assessable.

The issuance of preferred stock could adversely affect the voting power of holders of common stock and reduce the likelihood that common stockholders will receive dividend payments and payments upon liquidation. The issuance could have the effect of decreasing the market price of the common stock. The issuance of preferred stock also could have the effect of delaying, deterring or preventing a change in control of us.

Options and Restricted Stock Units

As of December 11, 2020, (i) options to purchase an aggregate of 16,712 shares of common stock were outstanding under our 2016 Converted Equity Awards Incentive Plan; (ii) no restricted stock units were outstanding under our 2016 Converted Equity Awards Incentive Plan; (iii) options to purchase an aggregate of 41,244 shares of common stock were outstanding under our Amended and Restated 2016 Stock Incentive Plan; (iv) no restricted stock units were outstanding under our Amended and Restated 2016 Stock Incentive Plan; (v) options to purchase an aggregate of 150,090 shares of common stock were outstanding under our 2018 Stock Incentive Plan; (vi) 9,000 restricted stock units were outstanding under our 2018 Stock Incentive Plan; and (vii) an additional 198,907 shares were reserved for future issuance under our 2018 Stock Incentive Plan.

Warrants

As of December 11, 2020, we have issued and outstanding warrants to purchase 436,844 shares of our common stock at an exercise price of \$18.20 per share. These warrants are immediately exercisable and expire on March 11, 2024. The exercise price and the number of shares of common stock purchasable upon the exercise of the warrants are subject to adjustment upon the occurrence of specific events, including sales of additional shares of common stock, stock dividends, stock splits, reclassifications and combinations of our common stock. If, at any time warrants are outstanding, any fundamental transaction occurs, as described in the warrants, the successor entity must assume the obligations to the warrant holders. Additionally, in the event of a fundamental transaction, other than one in which a successor entity that is a publicly traded corporation assumes the warrants, each holder will have the right to require us, or our successor, to repurchase the warrants for an amount of cash equal to the Black-Scholes value of the remaining unexercised portion of such warrants. Holders of the warrants do not have the rights or privileges of holders of our common shares, including any voting rights, until they exercise their warrants, with exceptions for participation in rights offerings or extraordinary distributions.

Stockholder Registration Rights

Certain holders of shares of our common stock are entitled to certain rights with respect to registration of such shares under the Securities Act. These shares are referred to as registrable securities. The holders of these registrable securities possess registration rights described in additional detail below pursuant to the terms of a registration rights agreement.

The registration of shares of our common stock pursuant to the exercise of registration rights described below would enable the holders to trade these shares without restriction under the Securities Act when the applicable registration statement is declared effective. We will pay the registration expenses, other than underwriting discounts, selling commissions and stock transfer taxes, of the shares registered pursuant to the demand and piggyback registration rights described below.

Generally, in an underwritten offering, the managing underwriter, if any, has the right, subject to specified conditions, to limit the number of shares the holders may include.

Demand Registration Rights

The holders of the registrable securities are entitled to certain demand registration rights. At any time, the holders of at least 20% of the registrable securities, on not more than two occasions, may request that we register all or a portion of their shares, subject to certain specified exceptions. Such request for registration must cover securities the aggregate offering price of which, before payment of underwriting discounts and commissions, exceeds \$10,000,000.

Piggyback Registration Rights

In connection with the filing of the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part, the holders of the registrable securities were entitled to, and the necessary percentage of holders waived, their rights to notice of such filing and to include their shares of registrable securities in the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part. If we propose to register for offer and sale any of our securities under the Securities Act in a future offering, either for our own account or for the account of other security holders, the holders of these shares will be entitled to certain “piggyback” registration rights allowing them to include their shares in such registration, subject to certain marketing and other limitations. As a result, whenever we propose to file a registration statement under the Securities Act, including a registration statement on Form S-3 as discussed below, other than with respect to a demand registration or a registration statement on Forms S-4 or S-8 or related to stock issued upon conversion of debt securities, the holders of these shares are entitled to notice of the registration and have the right, subject to limitations that the underwriters may impose on the number of shares included in the registration, to include their shares in the registration.

Lincoln Park Registration Rights

On December 20, 2018, we entered into a Registration Rights Agreement with Lincoln Park Capital Fund, LLC, or Lincoln Park, pursuant to which we agreed to file with the SEC one or more registration statements as necessary to register for sale under the Securities Act shares of common stock that we issued or may issue to Lincoln Park pursuant to the Purchase Agreement we entered into with Lincoln Park on December 20, 2018. On January 1, 2019, we filed a registration statement registering 6,000,000 of such shares of common stock for resale, and such registration statement was declared effective on February 13, 2019.

Anti-Takeover Effects of Our Charter Documents and Some Provisions of Delaware Law

Delaware Law

We are subject to Section 203 of the Delaware General Corporation Law, which prohibits a Delaware corporation from engaging in any business combination with any interested stockholder for a period of three years after the date that such stockholder became an interested stockholder, with the following exceptions:

- before such date, the board of directors of the corporation approved either the business combination or the transaction that resulted in the stockholder becoming an interested stockholder;
- upon completion of the transaction that resulted in the stockholder becoming an interested stockholder, the interested stockholder owned at least 85% of the voting stock of the corporation outstanding at the time the transaction began, excluding for purposes of determining the voting stock outstanding (but not the outstanding voting stock owned by the interested stockholder) those shares owned (1) by persons who are directors and also officers and (2) employee stock plans in which employee participants do not have the right to determine confidentially whether shares held subject to the plan will be tendered in a tender or exchange offer; or
- on or after such date, the business combination is approved by the board of directors and authorized at an annual or special meeting of the stockholders, and not by written consent, by the affirmative vote of at least 66 2/3% of the outstanding voting stock that is not owned by the interested stockholder.

In general, Section 203 defines a “business combination” to include the following:

- any merger or consolidation involving the corporation and the interested stockholder;
- any sale, transfer, pledge or other disposition of 10% or more of the assets of the corporation involving the interested stockholder;
- subject to certain exceptions, any transaction that results in the issuance or transfer by the corporation of any stock of the corporation to the interested stockholder;
- any transaction involving the corporation that has the effect of increasing the proportionate share of the stock or any class or series of the corporation beneficially owned by the interested stockholder; or
- the receipt by the interested stockholder of the benefit of any loans, advances, guarantees, pledges or other financial benefits by or through the corporation.

In general, Section 203 defines an “interested stockholder” as an entity or person who, together with the person’s affiliates and associates, beneficially owns, or within three years prior to the time of determination of interested stockholder status did own, 15% or more of the outstanding voting stock of the corporation.

Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws

Our certificate of incorporation provides for our board of directors to be divided into three classes with staggered three-year terms. Only one class of directors is elected at each annual meeting of our stockholders, with the other classes continuing for the remainder of their respective three-year terms. Because our stockholders do not have cumulative voting rights, stockholders holding a majority of the shares of common stock outstanding are able to elect all of our directors. Our certificate of incorporation and our bylaws also provide that directors may be removed by the stockholders only for cause upon the vote of 75% of our outstanding common stock.

Furthermore, the authorized number of directors may be changed only by resolution of the board of directors, and vacancies and newly created directorships on the board of directors may, except as otherwise required by law or determined by the board, only be filled by a majority vote of the directors then serving on the board, even though less than a quorum.

Our certificate of incorporation and bylaws also provide that all stockholder actions must be effected at a duly called meeting of stockholders and eliminates the right of stockholders to act by written consent without a meeting. Our bylaws also provide that only our chairman of the board, chief executive officer or the board of directors pursuant to a resolution adopted by a majority of the total number of authorized directors may call a special meeting of stockholders.

Our bylaws also provide that stockholders seeking to present proposals before a meeting of stockholders to nominate candidates for election as directors at a meeting of stockholders must provide timely advance notice in writing, and specify requirements as to the form and content of a stockholder’s notice.

Our certificate of incorporation and bylaws provide that the stockholders cannot amend many of the provisions described above except by a vote of 75% or more of our outstanding common stock.

The combination of these provisions makes it more difficult for our existing stockholders to replace our board of directors as well as for another party to obtain control of us by replacing our board of directors. Since our board of directors has the power to retain and discharge our officers, these provisions could also make it more difficult for existing stockholders or another party to effect a change in management. In addition, as more fully described below, authorization of undesignated preferred stock makes it possible for our board of directors to issue preferred stock with voting or other rights or preferences that could impede the success of any attempt to change our control.

Shareholder Rights Plan

On November 8, 2020, our Board adopted the Rights Plan pursuant to our Rights Agreement. The Rights Plan works by causing substantial dilution to any person or group that acquires beneficial ownership of ten percent (10%) or more of our common stock without the approval of the Board. As a result, the overall effect of the Rights Plan and the issuance of the rights pursuant to the Rights Plan may be to render more difficult or discourage a merger, tender or exchange offer or other business combination involving the Company that is not approved by the Board. The Rights Plan is not intended to interfere with any merger, tender or exchange offer or other business combination approved by the Board. The Rights Plan also does not prevent the Board from considering any offer that it considers to be in the best interest of its stockholders.

These provisions are intended to enhance the likelihood of continued stability in the composition of our board of directors and its policies and to discourage coercive takeover practices and inadequate takeover bids. These provisions are also designed to reduce our vulnerability to hostile takeovers and to discourage certain tactics that may be used in proxy fights. However, such provisions could have the effect of discouraging others from making tender offers for our shares and may have the effect of delaying changes in our control or management. As a consequence, these provisions may also inhibit fluctuations in the market price of our stock that could result from actual or rumored takeover attempts. We believe that the benefits of these provisions, including increased protection of our potential ability to negotiate with the proponent of an unfriendly or unsolicited proposal to acquire or restructure our company, outweigh the disadvantages of discouraging takeover proposals, because negotiation of takeover proposals could result in an improvement of their terms.

The Rights and the Rights Agreement will expire upon the earliest to occur of (i) the date on which all of the Rights are redeemed, (ii) the date on which the Rights are exchanged, and (iii) the close of business on November 8, 2021.

Transfer Agent and Registrar

The transfer agent and registrar for our common stock is Broadridge Financial Solutions, Inc. The transfer agent's address is P.O. Box 1342, Brentwood, NY 11717. The transfer agent for any series of preferred stock that we may offer under this prospectus will be named and described in the prospectus supplement for that series.

Listing on the Nasdaq Capital Market

Our common stock is listed on the Nasdaq Capital Market under the symbol "APVO."

DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES

We may issue debt securities from time to time, in one or more series, as either senior or subordinated debt or as senior or subordinated convertible debt. While the terms we have summarized below will apply generally to any debt securities that we may offer under this prospectus, we will describe the particular terms of any debt securities that we may offer in more detail in the applicable prospectus supplement. The terms of any debt securities offered under a prospectus supplement may differ from the terms described below. Unless the context requires otherwise, whenever we refer to the indenture, we also are referring to any supplemental indentures that specify the terms of a particular series of debt securities.

We will issue the debt securities under the indenture that we will enter into with the trustee named in the indenture. The indenture will be qualified under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, or the Trust Indenture Act. We have filed the form of indenture as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part, and supplemental indentures and forms of debt securities containing the terms of the debt securities being offered will be filed as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part or will be incorporated by reference from reports that we file with the SEC.

The following summary of material provisions of the debt securities and the indenture is subject to, and qualified in its entirety by reference to, all of the provisions of the indenture applicable to a particular series of debt securities. We urge you to read the applicable prospectus supplements and any related free writing prospectuses related to the debt securities that we may offer under this prospectus, as well as the complete indenture that contains the terms of the debt securities.

General

The indenture does not limit the amount of debt securities that we may issue. It provides that we may issue debt securities up to the principal amount that we may authorize and may be in any currency or currency unit that we may designate. Except for the limitations on consolidation, merger and sale of all or substantially all of our assets contained in the indenture, the terms of the indenture do not contain any covenants or other provisions designed to give holders of any debt securities protection against changes in our operations, financial condition or transactions involving us.

We may issue the debt securities issued under the indenture as “discount securities,” which means they may be sold at a discount below their stated principal amount. These debt securities, as well as other debt securities that are not issued at a discount, may be issued with “original issue discount,” or OID, for U.S. federal income tax purposes because of interest payment and other characteristics or terms of the debt securities. Material U.S. federal income tax considerations applicable to debt securities issued with OID will be described in more detail in any applicable prospectus supplement.

We will describe in the applicable prospectus supplement the terms of the series of debt securities being offered, including:

- the title of the series of debt securities;
- any limit upon the aggregate principal amount that may be issued;
- the maturity date or dates;
- the form of the debt securities of the series;
- the applicability of any guarantees;
- whether or not the debt securities will be secured or unsecured, and the terms of any secured debt;
- whether the debt securities rank as senior debt, senior subordinated debt, subordinated debt or any combination thereof, and the terms of any subordination;
- if the price (expressed as a percentage of the aggregate principal amount thereof) at which such debt securities will be issued is a price other than the principal amount thereof, the portion of the principal amount thereof payable upon declaration of acceleration of the maturity thereof, or if applicable, the portion of the principal amount of such debt securities that is convertible into another security or the method by which any such portion shall be determined;

- the interest rate or rates, which may be fixed or variable, or the method for determining the rate and the date interest will begin to accrue, the dates interest will be payable and the regular record dates for interest payment dates or the method for determining such dates;
- our right, if any, to defer payment of interest and the maximum length of any such deferral period;
- if applicable, the date or dates after which, or the period or periods during which, and the price or prices at which, we may, at our option, redeem the series of debt securities pursuant to any optional or provisional redemption provisions and the terms of those redemption provisions;
- the date or dates, if any, on which, and the price or prices at which we are obligated, pursuant to any mandatory sinking fund or analogous fund provisions or otherwise, to redeem, or at the holder's option to purchase, the series of debt securities and the currency or currency unit in which the debt securities are payable;
- the denominations in which we will issue the series of debt securities, if other than denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof;
- any and all terms, if applicable, relating to any auction or remarketing of the debt securities of that series and any security for our obligations with respect to such debt securities and any other terms which may be advisable in connection with the marketing of debt securities of that series;
- whether the debt securities of the series shall be issued in whole or in part in the form of a global security or securities; the terms and conditions, if any, upon which such global security or securities may be exchanged in whole or in part for other individual securities; and the depositary for such global security or securities;
- if applicable, the provisions relating to conversion or exchange of any debt securities of the series and the terms and conditions upon which such debt securities will be so convertible or exchangeable, including the conversion or exchange price, as applicable, or how it will be calculated and may be adjusted, any mandatory or optional (at our option or the holders' option) conversion or exchange features, the applicable conversion or exchange period and the manner of settlement for any conversion or exchange;
- if other than the full principal amount thereof, the portion of the principal amount of debt securities of the series which shall be payable upon declaration of acceleration of the maturity thereof;
- additions to or changes in the covenants applicable to the particular debt securities being issued, including, among others, the consolidation, merger or sale covenant;
- additions to or changes in the events of default with respect to the securities and any change in the right of the trustee or the holders to declare the principal, premium, if any, and interest, if any, with respect to such securities to be due and payable;
- additions to or changes in or deletions of the provisions relating to covenant defeasance and legal defeasance;
- additions to or changes in the provisions relating to satisfaction and discharge of the indenture;
- additions to or changes in the provisions relating to the modification of the indenture both with and without the consent of holders of debt securities issued under the indenture;
- the currency of payment of debt securities if other than U.S. dollars and the manner of determining the equivalent amount in U.S. dollars;
- whether interest will be payable in cash or additional debt securities at our or the holders' option and the terms and conditions upon which the election may be made;
- the terms and conditions, if any, upon which we will pay amounts in addition to the stated interest, premium, if any and principal amounts of the debt securities of the series to any holder that is not a "United States person" for federal tax purposes;
- any restrictions on transfer, sale or assignment of the debt securities of the series; and
- any other specific terms, preferences, rights or limitations of, or restrictions on, the debt securities, any other additions or changes in the provisions of the indenture, and any terms that may be required by us or advisable under applicable laws or regulations.

Conversion or Exchange Rights

We will set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement the terms on which a series of debt securities may be convertible into or exchangeable for our common stock or our other securities. We will include provisions as to settlement upon conversion or exchange and whether conversion or exchange is mandatory, at the option of the holder or at our option. We may include provisions pursuant to which the number of shares of our common stock or our other securities that the holders of the series of debt securities receive would be subject to adjustment.

Consolidation, Merger or Sale

Unless we provide otherwise in the prospectus supplement applicable to a particular series of debt securities, the indenture will not contain any covenant that restricts our ability to merge or consolidate, or sell, convey, transfer or otherwise dispose of our assets as an entirety or substantially as an entirety. However, any successor to or acquirer of such assets (other than a subsidiary of ours) must assume all of our obligations under the indenture or the debt securities, as appropriate.

Events of Default under the Indenture

Unless we provide otherwise in the prospectus supplement applicable to a particular series of debt securities, the following are events of default under the indenture with respect to any series of debt securities that we may issue:

- if we fail to pay any installment of interest on any series of debt securities, as and when the same shall become due and payable, and such default continues for a period of 90 days; provided, however, that a valid extension of an interest payment period by us in accordance with the terms of any indenture supplemental thereto shall not constitute a default in the payment of interest for this purpose;
- if we fail to pay the principal of, or premium, if any, on any series of debt securities as and when the same shall become due and payable whether at maturity, upon redemption, by declaration or otherwise, or in any payment required by any sinking or analogous fund established with respect to such series; provided, however, that a valid extension of the maturity of such debt securities in accordance with the terms of any indenture supplemental thereto shall not constitute a default in the payment of principal or premium, if any;
- if we fail to observe or perform any other covenant or agreement contained in the debt securities or the indenture, other than a covenant specifically relating to another series of debt securities, and our failure continues for 90 days after we receive written notice of such failure, requiring the same to be remedied and stating that such is a notice of default thereunder, from the trustee or holders of at least 25% in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of the applicable series; and
- if specified events of bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization occur.

If an event of default with respect to debt securities of any series occurs and is continuing, other than an event of default specified in the last bullet point above, the trustee or the holders of at least 25% in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of that series, by notice to us in writing, and to the trustee if notice is given by such holders, may declare the unpaid principal of, premium, if any, and accrued interest, if any, due and payable immediately. If an event of default specified in the last bullet point above occurs with respect to us, the principal amount of and accrued interest, if any, of each issue of debt securities then outstanding shall be due and payable without any notice or other action on the part of the trustee or any holder.

The holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of an affected series may waive any default or event of default with respect to the series and its consequences, except defaults or events of default regarding payment of principal, premium, if any, or interest, unless we have cured the default or event of default in accordance with the indenture. Any waiver shall cure the default or event of default.

Subject to the terms of the indenture, if an event of default under an indenture shall occur and be continuing, the trustee will be under no obligation to exercise any of its rights or powers under such indenture at the request or direction of any of the holders of the applicable series of debt securities, unless such holders have offered the trustee reasonable indemnity. The holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of any series will have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the

trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred on the trustee, with respect to the debt securities of that series, provided that:

- the direction so given by the holder is not in conflict with any law or the applicable indenture; and
- subject to its duties under the Trust Indenture Act, the trustee need not take any action that might involve it in personal liability or might be unduly prejudicial to the holders not involved in the proceeding.

A holder of the debt securities of any series will have the right to institute a proceeding under the indenture or to appoint a receiver or trustee, or to seek other remedies only if:

- the holder has given written notice to the trustee of a continuing event of default with respect to that series;
- the holders of at least 25% in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of that series have made written request;
- such holders have offered to the trustee indemnity satisfactory to it against the costs, expenses and liabilities to be incurred by the trustee in compliance with the request; and
- the trustee does not institute the proceeding, and does not receive from the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of that series other conflicting directions within 90 days after the notice, request and offer.

These limitations do not apply to a suit instituted by a holder of debt securities if we default in the payment of the principal, premium, if any, or interest on, the debt securities.

We will periodically file statements with the trustee regarding our compliance with specified covenants in the indenture.

Modification of Indenture; Waiver

We and the trustee may change an indenture without the consent of any holders with respect to the specific matters set forth below:

- to cure any ambiguity, defect or inconsistency in the indenture or in the debt securities of any series;
- to comply with the provisions described above under “Description of Debt Securities-Consolidation, Merger or Sale;”
- to provide for uncertificated debt securities in addition to or in place of certificated debt securities;
- to add to our covenants, restrictions, conditions or provisions such new covenants, restrictions, conditions or provisions for the benefit of the holders of all or any series of debt securities, to make the occurrence, or the occurrence and the continuance, of a default in any such additional covenants, restrictions, conditions or provisions an event of default or to surrender any right or power conferred upon us in the indenture;
- to add to, delete from or revise the conditions, limitations, and restrictions on the authorized amount, terms, or purposes of issue, authentication and delivery of debt securities, as set forth in the indenture;
- to make any change that does not adversely affect the interests of any holder of debt securities of any series in any material respect;
- to provide for the issuance of and establish the form and terms and conditions of the debt securities of any series as provided above under “Description of Debt Securities-General” to establish the form of any certifications required to be furnished pursuant to the terms of the indenture or any series of debt securities, or to add to the rights of the holders of any series of debt securities;
- to evidence and provide for the acceptance of appointment under any indenture by a successor trustee; and
- to comply with any requirements of the SEC in connection with the qualification of any indenture under the Trust Indenture Act.

In addition, under the indenture, the rights of holders of a series of debt securities may be changed by us and the trustee with the written consent of the holders of at least a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of each series that is affected. However, unless we provide otherwise in the prospectus supplement applicable to a particular series of debt securities, we and the trustee may make the following changes only with the consent of each holder of any outstanding debt securities affected:

- extending the fixed maturity of any debt securities of any series;
- reducing the principal amount, reducing the rate of or extending the time of payment of interest, or reducing any premium payable upon the redemption of any series of any debt securities; or
- reducing the percentage of debt securities, the holders of which are required to consent to any amendment, supplement, modification or waiver.

Discharge

Each indenture provides that we can elect to be discharged from our obligations with respect to one or more series of debt securities, except for specified obligations, including obligations to:

- provide for payment;
- register the transfer or exchange of debt securities of the series;
- replace stolen, lost or mutilated debt securities of the series;
- pay principal of and premium and interest on any debt securities of the series;
- maintain paying agencies;
- hold monies for payment in trust;
- recover excess money held by the trustee;
- compensate and indemnify the trustee; and
- appoint any successor trustee.

In order to exercise our rights to be discharged, we must deposit with the trustee money or government obligations sufficient to pay all the principal of, any premium, if any, and interest on, the debt securities of the series on the dates payments are due.

Form, Exchange and Transfer

We will issue the debt securities of each series only in fully registered form without coupons and, unless we provide otherwise in the applicable prospectus supplement, in denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof. The indenture provides that we may issue debt securities of a series in temporary or permanent global form and as book-entry securities that will be deposited with, or on behalf of, The Depository Trust Company, or DTC, or another depository named by us and identified in the applicable prospectus supplement with respect to that series. To the extent the debt securities of a series are issued in global form and as book-entry, a description of terms relating to any book-entry securities will be set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement.

At the option of the holder, subject to the terms of the indenture and the limitations applicable to global securities described in the applicable prospectus supplement, the holder of the debt securities of any series can exchange the debt securities for other debt securities of the same series, in any authorized denomination and of like tenor and aggregate principal amount.

Subject to the terms of the indenture and the limitations applicable to global securities set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement, holders of the debt securities may present the debt securities for exchange or for registration of transfer, duly endorsed or with the form of transfer endorsed thereon duly executed if so required by us or the security registrar, at the office of the security registrar or at the office of any transfer agent designated by us for this purpose. Unless otherwise provided in the debt securities that the holder presents for transfer or exchange, we will impose no service charge for any registration of transfer or exchange, but we may require payment of any taxes or other governmental charges.

We will name in the applicable prospectus supplement the security registrar, and any transfer agent in addition to the security registrar, that we initially designate for any debt securities. We may at any time designate additional transfer agents or rescind the designation of any transfer agent or approve a change in the office through which any transfer agent acts, except that we will be required to maintain a transfer agent in each place of payment for the debt securities of each series.

If we elect to redeem the debt securities of any series, we will not be required to:

- issue, register the transfer of, or exchange any debt securities of that series during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before the day of mailing of a notice of redemption of any debt securities that may be selected for redemption and ending at the close of business on the day of the mailing; or
- register the transfer of or exchange any debt securities so selected for redemption, in whole or in part, except the unredeemed portion of any debt securities we are redeeming in part.

Information Concerning the Trustee

The trustee, other than during the occurrence and continuance of an event of default under an indenture, undertakes to perform only those duties as are specifically set forth in the applicable indenture. Upon an event of default under an indenture, the trustee must use the same degree of care as a prudent person would exercise or use in the conduct of his or her own affairs. Subject to this provision, the trustee is under no obligation to exercise any of the powers given it by the indenture at the request of any holder of debt securities unless it is offered reasonable security and indemnity against the costs, expenses and liabilities that it might incur.

We intend to name the indenture trustee for each series of indenture securities in the related prospectus supplement.

Payment and Paying Agents

Unless we otherwise indicate in the applicable prospectus supplement, we will make payment of the interest on any debt securities on any interest payment date to the person in whose name the debt securities, or one or more predecessor securities, are registered at the close of business on the regular record date for the interest.

We will pay principal of and any premium and interest on the debt securities of a particular series at the office of the paying agents designated by us, except that unless we otherwise indicate in the applicable prospectus supplement, we will make interest payments by check that we will mail to the holder or by wire transfer to certain holders. Unless we otherwise indicate in the applicable prospectus supplement, we will designate the corporate trust office of the trustee as our sole paying agent for payments with respect to debt securities of each series. We will name in the applicable prospectus supplement any other paying agents that we initially designate for the debt securities of a particular series. We will maintain a paying agent in each place of payment for the debt securities of a particular series.

All money we pay to a paying agent or the trustee for the payment of the principal of or any premium or interest on any debt securities that remains unclaimed at the end of two years after such principal, premium or interest has become due and payable will be repaid to us, and the holder of the debt security thereafter may look only to us for payment thereof.

Governing Law

The indenture and the debt securities will be governed by and construed in accordance with the internal laws of the State of New York, except to the extent that the Trust Indenture Act is applicable.

DESCRIPTION OF WARRANTS

The following description, together with the additional information we may include in any applicable prospectus supplement and free writing prospectus, summarizes the material terms and provisions of the warrants that we may offer under this prospectus, which may consist of warrants to purchase common stock, preferred stock or debt securities and may be issued in one or more series. Warrants may be offered independently or in combination with common stock, preferred stock or debt securities offered by any prospectus supplement. While the terms we have summarized below will apply generally to any warrants that we may offer under this prospectus, we will describe the particular terms of any series of warrants in more detail in the applicable prospectus supplement. The following description of warrants will apply to the warrants offered by this prospectus unless we provide otherwise in the applicable prospectus supplement. The applicable prospectus supplement for a particular series of warrants may specify different or additional terms.

We have filed forms of the warrant agreements and forms of warrant certificates containing the terms of the warrants that may be offered as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part. We will file as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part, or will incorporate by reference from reports that we file with the SEC, the form of warrant and/or the warrant agreement and warrant certificate, as applicable, that contain the terms of the particular series of warrants we are offering, and any supplemental agreements, before the issuance of such warrants. The following summaries of material terms and provisions of the warrants are subject to, and qualified in their entirety by reference to, all the provisions of the form of warrant and/or the warrant agreement and warrant certificate, as applicable, and any supplemental agreements applicable to a particular series of warrants that we may offer under this prospectus. We urge you to read the applicable prospectus supplement related to the particular series of warrants that we may offer under this prospectus, as well as any related free writing prospectus, and the complete form of warrant and/or the warrant agreement and warrant certificate, as applicable, and any supplemental agreements, that contain the terms of the warrants.

General

We will describe in the applicable prospectus supplement the terms of the series of warrants being offered, including, to the extent applicable:

- the offering price and aggregate number of warrants offered;
- the currency for which the warrants may be purchased;
- the designation and terms of the securities with which the warrants are issued and the number of warrants issued with each such security or each principal amount of such security;
- the date on and after which the warrants and the related securities will be separately transferable;
- in the case of warrants to purchase debt securities, the principal amount of debt securities purchasable upon exercise of one warrant and the price at, and currency in which, this principal amount of debt securities may be purchased upon such exercise;
- in the case of warrants to purchase common stock or preferred stock, the number of shares of common stock or preferred stock, as the case may be, purchasable upon the exercise of one warrant and the price at which these shares may be purchased upon such exercise;
- the effect of any merger, consolidation, sale or other disposition of our business on the warrant agreements and the warrants;
- the terms of any rights to redeem or call the warrants;
- any provisions for changes to or adjustments in the exercise price or number of securities issuable upon exercise of the warrants;
- the dates on which the right to exercise the warrants will commence and expire;
- the manner in which the warrant agreements and warrants may be modified;
- a discussion of material United States federal income tax consequences of holding or exercising the warrants;
- the terms of the securities issuable upon exercise of the warrants; and
- any other specific terms, preferences, rights or limitations of or restrictions on the warrants.

Before exercising their warrants, holders of warrants will not have any of the rights of holders of the securities purchasable upon such exercise, including:

- in the case of warrants to purchase common stock or preferred stock, the right to receive dividends, if any, or, payments upon our liquidation, dissolution or winding up or to exercise voting rights, if any; or
- in the case of warrants to purchase debt securities, the right to receive payments of principal of, or premium, if any, or interest on, the debt securities purchasable upon exercise or to enforce covenants in the applicable indenture.

Exercise of Warrants

Each warrant will entitle the holder to purchase the securities that we specify in the applicable prospectus supplement at the exercise price that we describe in the applicable prospectus supplement. Unless we otherwise specify in the applicable prospectus supplement, holders of the warrants may exercise the warrants at any time up to the specified time on the expiration date that we set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement. After the close of business on the expiration date, unexercised warrants will become void.

Unless we otherwise specify in the applicable prospectus supplement, holders of the warrants may exercise the warrants by delivering the warrant or warrant certificate representing the warrants to be exercised together with specified information, and paying the required amount to the warrant agent, if applicable, in immediately available funds, as provided in the applicable prospectus supplement. We will set forth on the reverse side of any warrant certificate and in the applicable prospectus supplement the information that the holder of the warrant will be required to deliver to any warrant agent in connection with the exercise of the warrant.

Upon receipt of payment and the warrant or warrant certificate, as applicable, properly completed and duly executed at the corporate trust office of the warrant agent, if any, or any other office, including ours, indicated in the prospectus supplement, we will, as soon as practicable, issue and deliver the securities purchasable upon such exercise. If fewer than all of the warrants (or the warrants represented by such warrant certificate) are exercised, a new warrant or a new warrant certificate, as applicable, will be issued for the remaining warrants.

Governing Law

Unless we provide otherwise in the applicable prospectus supplement, the warrants and warrant agreements, and any claim, controversy or dispute arising under or related to the warrants or warrant agreements, will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of New York.

Enforceability of Rights by Holders of Warrants

Each warrant agent, if any, will act solely as our agent under the applicable warrant agreement and will not assume any obligation or relationship of agency or trust with any holder of any warrant. A single bank or trust company may act as warrant agent for more than one issue of warrants. A warrant agent will have no duty or responsibility in case of any default by us under the applicable warrant agreement or warrant, including any duty or responsibility to initiate any proceedings at law or otherwise, or to make any demand upon us. Any holder of a warrant may, without the consent of the related warrant agent or the holder of any other warrant, enforce by appropriate legal action its right to exercise, and receive the securities purchasable upon exercise of, its warrants.

LEGAL OWNERSHIP OF SECURITIES

We can issue securities in registered form or in the form of one or more global securities. We describe global securities in greater detail below. We refer to those persons who have securities registered in their own names on the books that we or any applicable trustee, depository or warrant agent maintain for this purpose as the “holders” of those securities. These persons are the legal holders of the securities. We refer to those persons who, indirectly through others, own beneficial interests in securities that are not registered in their own names, as “indirect holders” of those securities. As we discuss below, indirect holders are not legal holders, and investors in securities issued in book-entry form or in street name will be indirect holders.

Book-Entry Holders

We may issue securities in book-entry form only, as we will specify in the applicable prospectus supplement. This means securities may be represented by one or more global securities registered in the name of a financial institution that holds them as depository on behalf of other financial institutions that participate in the depository’s book-entry system. These participating institutions, which are referred to as participants, in turn, hold beneficial interests in the securities on behalf of themselves or their customers.

Only the person in whose name a security is registered is recognized as the holder of that security. Securities issued in global form will be registered in the name of the depository or its participants. Consequently, for securities issued in global form, we will recognize only the depository as the holder of the securities, and we will make all payments on the securities to the depository. The depository passes along the payments it receives to its participants, which in turn pass the payments along to their customers who are the beneficial owners. The depository and its participants do so under agreements they have made with one another or with their customers; they are not obligated to do so under the terms of the securities.

As a result, investors in a global security will not own securities directly. Instead, they will own beneficial interests in a global security, through a bank, broker or other financial institution that participates in the depository’s book-entry system or holds an interest through a participant. As long as the securities are issued in global form, investors will be indirect holders, and not legal holders, of the securities.

Street Name Holders

We may terminate a global security or issue securities in non-global form. In these cases, investors may choose to hold their securities in their own names or in “street name.” Securities held by an investor in street name would be registered in the name of a bank, broker or other financial institution that the investor chooses, and the investor would hold only a beneficial interest in those securities through an account he or she maintains at that institution.

For securities held in street name, we or any applicable trustee or depository will recognize only the intermediary banks, brokers and other financial institutions in whose names the securities are registered as the holders of those securities, and we or any applicable trustee or depository will make all payments on those securities to them. These institutions pass along the payments they receive to their customers who are the beneficial owners, but only because they agree to do so in their customer agreements or because they are legally required to do so. Investors who hold securities in street name will be indirect holders, not holders, of those securities.

Legal Holders

Our obligations, as well as the obligations of any applicable trustee and of any third parties employed by us or a trustee, run only to the legal holders of the securities. We do not have obligations to investors who hold beneficial interests in global securities, in street name or by any other indirect means. This will be the case whether an investor chooses to be an indirect holder of a security or has no choice because we are issuing the securities only in global form.

For example, once we make a payment or give a notice to the legal holder, we have no further responsibility for the payment or notice even if that legal holder is required, under agreements with its participants or customers or by law, to pass it along to the indirect holders but does not do so. Similarly, we may want to obtain the approval of the legal holders to amend an indenture, to relieve us of the consequences of a default or of our obligation to comply with a particular provision of the indenture or for other purposes. In such an event, we would seek approval only from the holders, and not the indirect holders, of the securities. Whether and how the legal holders contact the indirect holders is up to the legal holders.

Special Considerations for Indirect Holders

If you hold securities through a bank, broker or other financial institution, either in book-entry form because the securities are represented by one or more global securities or in street name, you should check with your own institution to find out:

- how it handles securities payments and notices;
- whether it imposes fees or charges;
- how it would handle a request for the holders' consent, if ever required;
- whether and how you can instruct it to send you securities registered in your own name so you can be a holder, if that is permitted in the future;
- how it would exercise rights under the securities if there were a default or other event triggering the need for holders to act to protect their interests; and
- if the securities are in book-entry form, how the depository's rules and procedures will affect these matters.

Global Securities

A global security is a security that represents one or any other number of individual securities held by a depository. Generally, all securities represented by the same global securities will have the same terms.

Each security issued in book-entry form will be represented by a global security that we issue to, deposit with and register in the name of a financial institution or its nominee that we select. The financial institution that we select for this purpose is called the depository. Unless we specify otherwise in the applicable prospectus supplement, DTC will be the depository for all securities issued in book-entry form.

A global security may not be transferred to or registered in the name of anyone other than the depository, its nominee or a successor depository, unless special termination situations arise. We describe those situations below under "Special Situations When a Global Security Will Be Terminated." As a result of these arrangements, the depository, or its nominee, will be the sole registered owner and legal holder of all securities represented by a global security, and investors will be permitted to own only beneficial interests in a global security. Beneficial interests must be held by means of an account with a broker, bank or other financial institution that in turn has an account with the depository or with another institution that does. Thus, an investor whose security is represented by a global security will not be a legal holder of the security, but only an indirect holder of a beneficial interest in the global security.

If the prospectus supplement for a particular security indicates that the security will be issued in global form only, then the security will be represented by a global security at all times unless and until the global security is terminated. If termination occurs, we may issue the securities through another book-entry clearing system or decide that the securities may no longer be held through any book-entry clearing system.

Special Considerations for Global Securities

The rights of an indirect holder relating to a global security will be governed by the account rules of the investor's financial institution and of the depository, as well as general laws relating to securities transfers. We do not recognize an indirect holder as a holder of securities and instead deal only with the depository that holds the global security.

If securities are issued only in the form of a global security, an investor should be aware of the following:

- an investor cannot cause the securities to be registered in his or her name, and cannot obtain non-global certificates for his or her interest in the securities, except in the special situations we describe below;
- an investor will be an indirect holder and must look to his or her own bank, broker or other financial institution for payments on the securities and protection of his or her legal rights relating to the securities, as we describe above;
- an investor may not be able to sell interests in the securities to some insurance companies and to other institutions that are required by law to own their securities in non-book-entry form;

- an investor may not be able to pledge his or her interest in a global security in circumstances where certificates representing the securities must be delivered to the lender or other beneficiary of the pledge in order for the pledge to be effective;
- the depositary's policies, which may change from time to time, will govern payments, transfers, exchanges and other matters relating to an investor's interest in a global security;
- we and any applicable trustee have no responsibility for any aspect of the depositary's actions or for its records of ownership interests in a global security, nor do we or any applicable trustee supervise the depositary in any way;
- the depositary may, and we understand that DTC will, require that those who purchase and sell interests in a global security within its book-entry system use immediately available funds, and your bank, broker or other financial institution may require you to do so as well; and
- financial institutions that participate in the depositary's book-entry system, and through which an investor holds its interest in a global security, may also have their own policies affecting payments, notices and other matters relating to the securities.

There may be more than one financial intermediary in the chain of ownership for an investor. We do not monitor and are not responsible for the actions of any of those intermediaries.

Special Situations When a Global Security Will Be Terminated

In a few special situations described below, the global security will terminate and interests in it will be exchanged for physical certificates representing those interests. After that exchange, the choice of whether to hold securities directly or in street name will be up to the investor. Investors must consult their own banks, brokers or other financial institutions to find out how to have their interests in securities transferred to their own name, so that they will be direct holders. We have described the rights of holders and street name investors above.

Unless we provide otherwise in the applicable prospectus supplement, the global security will terminate when the following special situations occur:

- if the depositary notifies us that it is unwilling, unable or no longer qualified to continue as depositary for that global security and we do not appoint another institution to act as depositary within 90 days;
- if we notify any applicable trustee that we wish to terminate that global security; or
- if an event of default has occurred with regard to securities represented by that global security and has not been cured or waived.

The prospectus supplement may also list additional situations for terminating a global security that would apply only to the particular series of securities covered by the applicable prospectus supplement. When a global security terminates, the depositary, and not we or any applicable trustee, is responsible for deciding the names of the institutions that will be the initial direct holders.

PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION

We may sell our securities covered by this prospectus in any of three ways (or in any combination):

- to or through underwriters or dealers;
- directly to one or more purchasers; or
- through agents.

We may distribute the securities:

- from time to time in one or more transactions at a fixed price or prices, which may be changed from time to time;
- at market prices prevailing at the time of sale;
- at prices related to the prevailing market prices; or
- at negotiated prices.

Each time we offer and sell securities covered by this prospectus, we will provide a prospectus supplement or supplements that will describe the method of distribution and set forth the terms of the offering, including:

- the name or names of any underwriters, dealers or agents;
- the amounts of securities underwritten or purchased by each of them;
- the purchase price of securities and the proceeds we will receive from the sale;
- any over-allotment options under which underwriters may purchase additional securities from us;
- any underwriting discounts or commissions or agency fees and other items constituting underwriters' or agents' compensation;
- the public offering price of the securities;
- any discounts, commissions or concessions allowed or reallocated or paid to dealers; and
- any securities exchange or market on which the securities may be listed.

Any public offering price and any discounts or concessions allowed or reallocated or paid to dealers may be changed from time to time. We may determine the price or other terms of the securities offered under this prospectus by use of an electronic auction. We will describe how any auction will determine the price or any other terms, how potential investors may participate in the auction and the nature of the obligations of the underwriter, dealer or agent in the applicable prospectus supplement.

Underwriters or dealers may offer and sell the offered securities from time to time in one or more transactions, including negotiated transactions, at a fixed public offering price or at varying prices determined at the time of sale. If underwriters or dealers are used in the sale of any securities, the securities will be acquired by the underwriters or dealers for their own account and may be resold from time to time in one or more transactions described above. The securities may be either offered to the public through underwriting syndicates represented by managing underwriters, or directly by underwriters or dealers. Generally, the underwriters' or dealers' obligations to purchase the securities will be subject to certain conditions precedent. The underwriters or dealers will be obligated to purchase all of the securities if they purchase any of the securities, unless otherwise specified in the prospectus supplement. We may use underwriters with whom we have a material relationship. We will describe the nature of any such relationship in the prospectus supplement, naming the underwriter.

We may sell the securities through agents from time to time. The prospectus supplement will name any agent involved in the offer or sale of the securities and any commissions we pay to them. Generally, any agent will be acting on a best efforts basis for the period of its appointment. We may authorize underwriters, dealers or agents to solicit offers by certain purchasers to purchase the securities from us at the public offering price set forth in the prospectus supplement pursuant to delayed delivery contracts providing for payment and delivery on a specified date in the future. The contracts will be subject only to those conditions set forth in the prospectus supplement, and the prospectus supplement will set forth any commissions we pay for solicitation of these contracts.

Agents, dealers and underwriters may be entitled to indemnification by us against certain civil liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act, or to contribution with respect to payments which the agents, dealers or underwriters may be required to make in respect thereof. Agents, dealers and underwriters may be customers of, engage in transactions with, or perform services for us in the ordinary course of business.

All securities we may offer, other than common stock, will be new issues of securities with no established trading market. Any underwriters may make a market in these securities, but will not be obligated to do so and may discontinue any market making at any time without notice. We cannot guarantee the liquidity of the trading markets for any securities.

Any underwriter may engage in overallotment, stabilizing transactions, short covering transactions and penalty bids in accordance with Regulation M under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended. Overallotment involves sales in excess of the offering size, which create a short position. This short sales position may involve either “covered” short sales or “naked” short sales. Covered short sales are short sales made in an amount not greater than the underwriters’ over-allotment option to purchase additional securities in this offering described above. The underwriters may close out any covered short position either by exercising their over-allotment option or by purchasing securities in the open market. To determine how they will close the covered short position, the underwriters will consider, among other things, the price of securities available for purchase in the open market, as compared to the price at which they may purchase securities through the over-allotment option. Naked short sales are short sales in excess of the over-allotment option. The underwriters must close out any naked short position by purchasing securities in the open market. A naked short position is more likely to be created if the underwriters are concerned that, in the open market after pricing, there may be downward pressure on the price of the securities that could adversely affect investors who purchase securities in this offering. Stabilizing transactions permit bids to purchase the underlying security for the purpose of fixing the price of the security so long as the stabilizing bids do not exceed a specified maximum. Penalty bids permit the underwriters to reclaim a selling concession from a dealer when the securities originally sold by the dealer are purchased in a covering transaction to cover short positions.

Any underwriters who are qualified market makers on the Nasdaq Capital Market may engage in passive market making transactions in our common stock, preferred stock, warrants and debt securities, as applicable, on the Nasdaq Capital Market in accordance with Rule 103 of Regulation M, during the business day prior to the pricing of the offering, before the commencement of offers or sales of the securities. Passive market makers must comply with applicable volume and price limitations and must be identified as passive market makers. In general, a passive market maker must display its bid at a price not in excess of the highest independent bid for such security; if all independent bids are lowered below the passive market maker’s bid, however, the passive market maker’s bid must then be lowered when certain purchase limits are exceeded.

In compliance with guidelines of the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, or FINRA, the maximum consideration or discount to be received by any FINRA member or independent broker dealer may not exceed 8% of the aggregate amount of the securities offered pursuant to this prospectus and any applicable prospectus supplement.

Similar to other purchase transactions, an underwriter’s purchase to cover the syndicate short sales or to stabilize the market price of our securities may have the effect of raising or maintaining the market price of our securities or preventing or mitigating a decline in the market price of our securities. As a result, the price of our securities may be higher than the price that might otherwise exist in the open market. The imposition of a penalty bid might also have an effect on the price of the securities if it discourages resales of the securities.

Neither we nor the underwriters make any representation or prediction as to the effect that the transactions described above may have on the price of the securities. If such transactions are commenced, they may be discontinued without notice at any time.

LEGAL MATTERS

Certain legal matters, including the validity of the issuance of the securities offered, will be passed upon for us by Morgan, Lewis & Bockius LLP, Boston, Massachusetts. Additional legal matters may be passed upon by us or any underwriters, dealers or agents, by counsel that we will name in the applicable prospectus supplement.

EXPERTS

The consolidated financial statements of Aptevo Therapeutics Inc. included in Aptevo Therapeutics' Current Report (Form 8-K) filed on December 14, 2020 have been audited by Ernst & Young LLP, independent registered public accounting firm, as set forth in their report thereon (which contains an explanatory paragraph describing conditions that raise substantial doubt about the Company's ability to continue as a going concern as described in Note 1 to the consolidated financial statements), included therein, and incorporated herein by reference. Such consolidated financial statements are incorporated herein by reference in reliance upon such report given on the authority of such firm as experts in accounting and auditing.

WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION

This prospectus is part of a registration statement we filed with the SEC. This prospectus does not contain all of the information set forth in the registration statement and the exhibits to the registration statement. For further information with respect to us and the securities we are offering under this prospectus, we refer you to the registration statement and the exhibits and schedules filed as a part of the registration statement. Neither we nor any agent, underwriter or dealer has authorized any person to provide you with different information. We are not making an offer of these securities in any state where the offer is not permitted. You should not assume that the information in this prospectus is accurate as of any date other than the date on the front page of this prospectus, regardless of the time of delivery of this prospectus or any sale of the securities offered by this prospectus.

We are subject to the information reporting requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or the Exchange Act, and we are required to file reports, proxy statements and other information with the SEC. These reports, proxy statements, and other information are available for inspection and copying at the SEC's website at <http://www.sec.gov>. We also maintain a website at www.aptevo.com, at which you may access these materials free of charge as soon as reasonably practicable after they are electronically filed with, or furnished to, the SEC. Information contained on or accessible through our website is not a part of this prospectus, and the inclusion of our website address in this prospectus is an inactive textual reference only.

INCORPORATION OF CERTAIN INFORMATION BY REFERENCE

The SEC allows us to “incorporate by reference” the information we file with it, which means that we can disclose important information to you by referring you to those documents instead of having to repeat the information in this prospectus. The information incorporated by reference is considered to be part of this prospectus, and later information that we file with the SEC will automatically update and supersede this information. We incorporate by reference the documents listed below and any future filings (including those made after the initial filing of the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part and prior to the effectiveness of such registration statement) we will make with the SEC under Sections 13(a), 13(c), 14, or 15(d) of the Exchange Act until the termination of the offering of the shares covered by this prospectus (other than information furnished under Item 2.02 or Item 7.01 of Form 8-K):

- our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2019 filed with the SEC on March 25, 2020;
- our Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q filed with the SEC on May 13, 2020, August 14, 2020 and November 10, 2020;
- our Current Reports on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on March 2, 2020, March 13, 2020, March 27, 2020, April 13, 2020, June 1, 2020, June 25, 2020, August 6, 2020, August 13, 2020, August 27, 2020, November 9, 2020 (under Items 1.01, 3.03, 5.03, and 8.01), November 30, 2020, December 2, 2020, and December 14, 2020; and
- the description of our common stock, which is contained in our registration statement on Form 10 initially filed with the SEC on April 15, 2016 (File No. 001-37746) under the Exchange Act and declared effective on July 15, 2016, including any amendment or report filed for the purpose of updating such description.

You can request a copy of these filings, at no cost, by writing or telephoning us at the following address or telephone number:

Aptevo Therapeutics Inc.
2401 4th Avenue, Suite 1050
Seattle, WA 98121
Attn: Acting General Counsel
(206) 838-0500

This prospectus is part of a registration statement we filed with the SEC. That registration statement and the exhibits filed along with the registration statement contain more information about us and the shares in this offering. Because information about documents referred to in this prospectus is not always complete, you should read the full documents which are filed as exhibits to the registration statement. You may read and copy the full registration statement and its exhibits at the SEC’s website.

The information contained in this prospectus is not complete and may be changed. These securities may not be sold until the registration statement filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission is effective. This prospectus is not an offer to sell these securities and is not soliciting an offer to buy these securities in any jurisdiction where the offer or sale is not permitted.

Subject to Completion, Dated December 14, 2020

PROSPECTUS

\$50,000,000



Common Stock

We have entered into an equity distribution agreement, or the Equity Distribution Agreement, with Piper Sandler & Co., or Piper Sandler, dated December 14, 2020, relating to shares of our common stock. This prospectus covers the offering, issuance and sale by us of up to a maximum aggregate offering price of \$50,000,000 of our common stock that may be issued and sold under the Equity Distribution Agreement. This offering supersedes and replaces the program we commenced in December 2017.

Our common stock is listed on the Nasdaq Capital Market under the symbol "APVO." On December 11, 2020, the last reported sale price of our common stock on the Nasdaq Capital Market was \$44.04 per share.

Sales of our common stock, if any, under this prospectus may be made in sales deemed to be "at the market offerings" as defined in Rule 415 promulgated under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or the Securities Act. Piper Sandler is not required to sell any specific number or dollar amount of our common stock, but will act as a sales agent using commercially reasonable efforts consistent with its normal trading and sales practices, on mutually agreed terms between Piper Sandler and us. There is no arrangement for funds to be received in any escrow, trust or similar arrangement.

The compensation to Piper Sandler for sales of common stock sold pursuant to the Equity Distribution Agreement will be an amount equal to 3% of the gross proceeds of any shares of common stock sold thereunder. In connection with the sale of the common stock on our behalf, Piper Sandler will be deemed to be an "underwriter" within the meaning of the Securities Act, and the compensation of Piper Sandler will be deemed to be underwriting commissions or discounts. We have also agreed to provide indemnification and contribution to Piper Sandler with respect to certain liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act or the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or the Exchange Act.

Investing in our common stock involves a high degree of risk. Please read the information contained and incorporated by reference under the heading "Risk Factors" on page 4 of this prospectus, and under similar headings in any related free writing prospectuses and in the documents incorporated by reference herein and therein.

Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or determined if this prospectus is truthful or complete. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.

Piper Sandler

The date of this prospectus is .

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>Page</u>
About this Prospectus	i
Prospectus Summary	1
The Offering	3
Risk Factors	4
Forward-Looking Statements	7
Use of Proceeds	8
Description of Capital Stock	9
Plan of Distribution	15
Legal Matters	16
Experts	16
Where You Can Find More Information	16
Incorporation of Certain Information by Reference	16

ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS

This prospectus is part of a registration statement on Form S-3 that we filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission, or the SEC, using a “shelf” registration process. Under this shelf registration process, we may from time to time sell shares of our common stock in one or more offerings for an aggregate initial offering price of up to \$50,000,000. Before buying any of the common stock that we are offering, we urge you to carefully read this prospectus, together with the information incorporated by reference herein as described under the headings “Where You Can Find More Information” and “Incorporation of Certain Information by Reference,” and any free writing prospectus or prospectus supplement that we have authorized for use in connection with this offering. These documents contain important information that you should consider when making your investment decision.

This prospectus describes the terms of this offering of common stock and also adds to and updates information contained in the documents incorporated by reference herein. To the extent there is a conflict between the information contained in this prospectus, on the one hand, and the information contained in any document incorporated by reference herein that was filed with the SEC before the date of this prospectus, on the other hand, you should rely on the information in this prospectus. If any statement in one of these documents is inconsistent with a statement in another document having a later date - for example, a document incorporated by reference herein - the statement in the document having the later date modifies or supersedes the earlier statement.

You should rely only on the information contained or incorporated by reference in this prospectus and in any free writing prospectus that we may authorize for use in connection with this offering. We have not, and Piper Sandler has not, authorized any other person to provide you with different information. We are not, and Piper Sandler is not, making an offer to sell or seeking an offer to buy common stock under this prospectus in any jurisdiction where the offer or sale is not permitted. The information contained and incorporated by reference in this prospectus, as well as in any free writing prospectus that we may authorize for use in connection with this offering, is accurate only as of its respective date, regardless of the time of delivery of this prospectus or any related free writing prospectus or the time of any sale of a security. Our business, financial condition, results of operations and prospects may have changed since those dates.

For investors outside the United States: neither we, nor Piper Sandler, have done anything that would permit this offering or possession or distribution of this prospectus in any jurisdiction where action for that purpose is required, other than in the United States. You are required to inform yourselves about, and to observe any restrictions relating to, this offering and the distribution of this prospectus.

Except as otherwise indicated herein or as the context otherwise requires, references in this prospectus to “Aptevo,” “the Company,” “we,” “us,” “our” and similar references refer to Aptevo Therapeutics Inc., a corporation under the laws of the State of Delaware.

This prospectus and the information incorporated by reference herein include trademarks, service marks and trade names owned by us or other companies. All trademarks, service marks and trade names included or incorporated by reference in this prospectus or any related free writing prospectus are the property of their respective owners.

PROSPECTUS SUMMARY

The following summary highlights information contained and incorporated by reference in this prospectus and does not contain all the information that may be important to purchasers of our common stock. For a more complete understanding of our Company and this offering, we encourage you to read and consider carefully the more detailed information contained and incorporated by reference in this prospectus and in any free writing prospectus that we may authorize for use in connection with this offering, including the information referred to under the heading "Risk Factors" on page 4-6 of this prospectus and under similar headings in the documents incorporated by reference herein.

Overview

We are a clinical-stage, research and development biotechnology company focused on developing novel immunotherapeutic candidates for the treatment of cancer. Our lead clinical candidate, APVO436, and preclinical candidates, ALG.APV-527 and APVO603, were developed using our ADAPTIR™ modular protein technology platform. Our preclinical candidate APVO442 was developed using our ADAPTIR-FLEX™ modular protein technology platform.

The versatile and robust ADAPTIR and ADAPTIR-FLEX platforms are designed to generate monospecific, bispecific and multispecific antibody candidates. ADAPTIR and ADAPTIR-FLEX are both modular platforms, which gives us the flexibility to generate immunotherapeutic candidates designed for utilizing a variety of mechanisms of action. This flexibility in design allows us to potentially generate novel therapeutic candidates designed for the treatment of different types of cancer and autoimmune diseases. We have numerous investigational-stage product candidates based on our ADAPTIR platform. The ADAPTIR platform technology is designed to generate monospecific and bispecific immunotherapeutic proteins that specifically bind to one or more targets, for example, bispecific therapeutic molecules, which may have structural and functional advantages over monoclonal antibodies. The structural differences of ADAPTIR molecules over monoclonal antibodies allow for the development of ADAPTIR immunotherapeutics that are designed to engage immune effector cells and disease targets in a novel manner to produce unique signaling responses and ultimately kill tumors or modulate the immune system to kill tumors.

ADAPTIR-FLEX can be used to potentially generate immunotherapeutic candidates that are designed to have modified affinity and valency to a target, which has the potential to improve specificity, tumor targeting and therapeutic benefit with application to multiple hematologic and solid tumors. ADAPTIR-FLEX utilizes the same IgG-backbone and linkers found in ADAPTIR, but in a heterodimeric format, while potentially retaining good manufacturability attributes and an extended half-life that may enable improved dosing regimens in clinical development.

We are skilled at product candidate generation, validation and subsequent preclinical and clinical development using the ADAPTIR and ADAPTIR-FLEX platforms. We are developing our ADAPTIR molecules by way of our protein engineering, preclinical development and process development capabilities and clinical development capabilities.

We are currently conducting a Phase 1/1b dose escalation, open-label study evaluating the safety and pharmacokinetic profile of APVO436, a novel anti-CD123 x anti-CD3 targeted investigational bispecific antibody therapeutic candidate being evaluated for the treatment of acute myeloid leukemia and myelodysplastic syndrome. Dosing in Cohorts 1 through 7 of this study is complete and enrollment of Cohort 8 has commenced. On November 9, 2020, we announced preliminary data regarding cohort 6 of our APVO436 clinical study, which indicated complete remission in two patients. The preliminary data also showed one patient who exhibited stable disease status, and six patients who exhibited disease progression. Below are details related to the two patients in cohort 6 who exhibited complete remission:

	Patient 1: Bone Marrow Blasts	Patient 2: Bone Marrow Blasts
At screen	29%	33%
After first cycle	8%	46%
After second cycle	6%	8%
After fourth cycle	0%	4%

Unless otherwise noted herein, clinical data contained herein are provided as of November 6, 2020 and reference to complete remission, stable disease, and disease regression is defined in a manner consistent with the European LeukemiaNet (ELN) 2017 criteria.

We are also planning to advance ALG.APV-527, our novel investigational bispecific ADAPTIR candidate, into phase 1 clinical development with Alligator Bioscience, or Alligator, as a co-development fifty-fifty partnership, subject to regulatory authorization. ALG.APV-527 is designed for a novel mechanism of action intended to simultaneously target 4-1BB (CD137) and 5T4, a tumor antigen overexpressed in a number of different types of cancer. We and Alligator anticipate filing a Clinical Trial Authorization in the first half of 2021, to initiate phase 1 clinical development in multiple sites in the European Union. As ALG.APV-527 potentially moves into clinical development, we and Alligator intend to continue to explore licensing opportunities.

On February 28, 2020, we entered into a purchase agreement with Medexus Pharma, Inc., or Medexus, pursuant to which we sold all of the issued and outstanding limited liability company interests of Aptevo BioTherapeutics LLC, or Aptevo LLC, a wholly-owned subsidiary of Aptevo and the registered owner of IXINITY. We refer to the transactions contemplated by the foregoing purchase agreement as the Medexus Transaction. As part of the consideration for the Medexus Transaction, we are entitled to receive future potential payments as the result of the achievement of certain regulatory and commercial milestones and through deferred payments based on net sales of IXINITY in the United States and Canada. We received \$0.2 million of deferred payments (royalties) from Medexus related to sales of IXINITY for the second quarter of 2020. Additionally, we are entitled to receive CD20 biosimilar product (royalty) payments from Pfizer Inc., or Pfizer, of 2.5% of net sales of a rituximab biosimilar product, RUXIENCE, in the United States, European Union, and Japan. During the quarter ended September 30, 2020, we recorded \$1.5 million of RUXIENCE royalty payments from Pfizer. In July 2020, we announced that we engaged Piper Sandler to sell our RUXIENCE and IXINITY royalty stream and deferred payments and milestones, respectively.

Company Information

On August 6, 2015, Emergent BioSolutions Inc., or Emergent, announced a plan to separate into two independent publicly traded companies. To accomplish this separation, Emergent created Aptevo to be the parent company for the development-based biotechnology business focused on novel oncology and hematology therapeutics. Aptevo was incorporated in Delaware in February 2016 as a wholly owned subsidiary of Emergent. To effect the separation, Emergent made a pro rata distribution of Aptevo's common stock to Emergent's stockholders on August 1, 2016.

In March 2020, we effected a reverse stock-split whereby every 14 shares of our common stock issued and outstanding as of March 26, 2020 were automatically combined into one issued and outstanding share of our common stock. Our common stock currently trades on the Nasdaq Capital Market under the symbol "APVO." Our primary executive offices are located at 2401 4th Avenue, Suite 1050, Seattle, Washington and our telephone number is (206) 838-0500. Our website address is www.apvotherapeutics.com. The information contained in, or that can be accessed through, our website is not a part of or incorporated by reference in this prospectus, and you should not consider it part of this prospectus or part of any prospectus supplement.

Risks Associated with our Business

Our business is subject to numerous risks, as described under the heading "Risk Factors" and under similar headings in any related free writing prospectus and the documents incorporated by reference herein and therein.

THE OFFERING

Common Stock Offered By Us:	Shares of our common stock having an aggregate offering price of up to \$50,000,000.
Manner of Offering:	“At the market offering” that may be made from time to time through our sales agent, Piper Sandler. See “Plan of Distribution” on page 14 of this prospectus.
Use of proceeds:	We currently intend to use the net proceeds from this offering primarily for research, development and manufacturing of product candidates, and for other general corporate purposes. See “Use of Proceeds” on page 7 of this prospectus.
Risk factors:	Investing in our common stock involves significant risks. Before deciding whether to invest in our common stock, please read the information contained and incorporated by reference in this prospectus, including under the heading “Risk Factors” on page 4 of this prospectus and under similar headings in any related free writing prospectus and the documents incorporated by reference herein and therein.
Nasdaq Capital Market Symbol:	“APVO”

RISK FACTORS

Investing in our common stock involves a high degree of risk. Before deciding whether to invest in our common stock, you should consider carefully the risks and uncertainties described in the documents incorporated by reference herein (including our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2019 and our Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q for the quarters ended March 31, 2020, June 30, 2020 and September 30, 2020, as well as any amendments thereto reflected in subsequent filings with the SEC) together with any free writing prospectus that we may authorize for use in connection with this offering. The risks described in these documents are not the only ones we face, but those that we consider to be material. There may be other unknown or unpredictable economic, business, competitive, regulatory or other factors that could have material adverse effects on our future results. Past financial performance may not be a reliable indicator of future performance, and historical trends should not be used to anticipate results or trends in future periods. If any of these risks actually occurs, our business, financial condition, results of operations or cash flow could be seriously harmed. This could cause the trading price of our common stock to decline, resulting in a loss of all or part of your investment. Please also read carefully the section below entitled “Forward-Looking Statements.”

Additional Risks Related to This Offering

Management will have broad discretion as to the use of the proceeds from this offering, and may not use the proceeds effectively.

Because we have not designated the amount of net proceeds from this offering to be used for any particular purpose, our management will have broad discretion as to the application of such proceeds and could use them for purposes other than those contemplated at the time of the offering. Our management may use the net proceeds for corporate purposes that may not improve our financial condition or market value.

We have received an unsolicited, non-binding proposal to acquire all of the outstanding shares of our common stock, which proposal and our response thereto may cause volatility in the trading price of our common stock.

On November 18, 2020, our Board of Directors, or our Board, received an unsolicited, non-binding letter from Kevin Tang, on behalf of Tang Capital Partners, LP, or TCP, proposing to acquire all of the outstanding shares of our common stock not already beneficially owned by TCP for \$50.00 per share in cash, subject to confirmatory due diligence conducted under a customary non-disclosure agreement. For purposes herein, we refer to the foregoing as the Proposal.

We have retained Piper Sandler to assist and advise the Board in its evaluation of the Proposal, as well as our other strategic alternatives, including remaining independent and executing our existing strategic plans. The Board has met on more than one occasion to carefully evaluate and consider the Proposal and representatives of the Company have discussed the Proposal directly with representatives of TCP. However, no decision has been made with respect to our response to the Proposal or its willingness to enter into a customary non-disclosure agreement with TCP. The Board, in consultation with its financial and legal advisors, will continue to carefully evaluate and consider the Proposal in due course in the context of our strategic plans, and our ongoing review of a broad range of opportunities to enhance stockholder value through strategic, financial and operational measures.

There can be no assurance that the Board’s consideration of the Proposal or our other strategic alternatives will result in a transaction with TCP or any other party or any specific change in our current strategic plan. Additionally, even if the Board considers the Proposal to be in the best interests of our stockholders, there can be no assurances that TCP will not withdraw the Proposal, whether before the Board has the opportunity to accept the Proposal or before TCP has completed its confirmatory due diligence. As a result of this uncertainty, the future trading price of our common stock is likely to be volatile and could be subject to wide price fluctuations. Moreover, the unsolicited nature of the Proposal may disrupt our business by causing uncertainty among current and potential employees and other constituencies important to our success, which could be disruptive to our business.

We believe it is likely that we recently experienced an “ownership change” as defined in Section 382 of the U.S. Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, or the Code, and, if we are correct, the tax benefits of our pre-“ownership change” net operating loss carryforwards and certain other tax attributes will be subject to substantial annual limitation under Sections 382 and 383 of the Code.

In general, a corporation undergoes an “ownership change” under Section 382 of the Code if, among other things, the stockholders who own, directly or indirectly, 5% or more of the corporation’s stock (by value), or are otherwise treated as “5% shareholders” under Section 382 of the Code and the Treasury regulations promulgated thereunder, increase their aggregate percentage ownership (by value) of the corporation’s stock by more than 50 percentage points over the lowest percentage of value owned by the 5% shareholders at any time during the applicable testing period, which is generally the rolling three-year period preceding the potential ownership change. Such potential ownership change testing events include changes involving a shareholder becoming a 5% shareholder or arising from a new issuance of capital stock or share repurchases by the corporation, subject to certain exceptions.

In the event of an “ownership change,” Sections 382 and 383 of the Code impose an annual limitation on the amount of taxable income a corporation may offset with pre-change net operating loss carryforwards and certain other tax attributes. The annual limitation is generally equal to the value of the outstanding stock of the corporation immediately before the ownership change (excluding certain capital contributions), multiplied by the long-term tax-exempt rate as published by the IRS for the month in which the ownership change occurs (the long-term tax-exempt rate for November 2020 is 0.89%). Any unused annual limitation may generally be carried over to subsequent years until the pre-ownership change net operating loss carryforwards and certain other tax attributes expire or are fully utilized by the corporation. Similar provisions of state tax law may also apply to limit the use of state net operating loss carryforwards and certain other tax attributes.

Additionally, Section 382 of the Code includes special rules that apply to a corporation with a significant amount of net unrealized built-in gains or net unrealized built-in losses in its assets immediately prior to ownership change under Section 382 of the Code. In general, certain built-in gains recognized during the five-year period beginning on the date of the ownership change increases the corporation’s annual limitation under Section 382 and 383 of the Code in the taxable year that such built-in gains are recognized or deemed recognized (but only up to the amount of the net unrealized built-in gain), while certain built-in losses recognized during such five-year period is subject to the annual limitation under Section 382 of the Code (but only up to the amount of the net unrealized built-in loss).

As of December 31, 2019, we had approximately \$135.0 million and \$59.0 million of federal and state net operating loss carryforwards, respectively, available to reduce future taxable income that will begin to expire in 2028 for federal purposes and 2019 for state tax purposes. However, we believe it is likely that we experienced an ownership change under Section 382 of the Code as of November 6, 2020 as a result of the acquisition by TCP, Tang Capital Management, LLC and Kevin Tang of 1,760,000 shares of our common stock. As a result of this ownership change, or the Tang Ownership Change, our ability to use our net operating loss carryforwards and certain other tax attributes in existence prior to the ownership change will be subject to an annual limitation under Sections 382 and 383 of the Code as described above. Thus, a portion or all of our net operating loss carryforwards and certain other tax attributes could expire unused and be unavailable to offset future income tax liabilities. We are currently working to determine the amount of any annual limitation, including a potential increase to this annual limitation by what we believe to be a significant net unrealized built-in-gain immediately prior to the relevant ownership change under Section 382 of the Code.

We cannot predict or control the occurrence or timing of another ownership change under Section 382 of the Code in the future. In addition, it is possible that this offering could result in an ownership change. If another ownership change were to occur, further limitations could apply to our net operating losses and certain other tax attributes, which could result in a material amount of our net operating loss carryforwards and certain other tax attributes becoming unavailable to offset future income tax liabilities.

The realization of all or a portion of our deferred income tax assets (including net operating loss carryforwards) is dependent upon the generation of future income during the statutory carryforward periods. Our inability to utilize our limited pre-ownership change net operating loss carryforwards and certain other tax attributes, or the occurrence of a future ownership change and resulting additional limitations to these tax attributes, could have a material adverse effect on our financial condition, results of operations and cash flows.

If we are unable to maintain, or there is a lapse in, our directors' and officers' liability insurance as a result of the Tang Ownership Change or otherwise, our indemnification obligations and limitations of our directors' and officers' liability insurance may have a material adverse effect on our financial condition, results of operations and cash flows.

Under Delaware law, our certificate of incorporation, and our bylaws and certain indemnification agreements to which we are a party, we have an obligation to indemnify, or we have otherwise agreed to indemnify, certain of our current and former directors and officers with respect to past, current and future investigations and litigation. In order to reduce the risk of expense of these obligations, we maintain directors' and officers' liability insurance. However, as a result of the Tang Ownership Change, the cost to us of our directors' and officers' liability insurance coverage has increased, and it may continue to increase in the future, or the coverage thereunder may be reduced or terminated in full. In the event that the coverage under our directors' and officers' liability insurance is reduced or terminated, we will be required to pay the expenses of indemnifying our current and former directors and officers in their defense of current and future investigations and litigation, which expenses may be significant. The increased costs to us of our directors' and officers' liability insurance coverage, or our indemnification obligations if our directors' and officers' liability insurance coverage is reduced or terminated, could result in the diversion of our financial resources and may have a material adverse effect on our financial condition, results of operations and cash flows.

You may experience immediate and substantial dilution.

In order to raise additional capital, we may in the future offer additional shares of our common stock or other securities convertible into or exchangeable for our common stock at prices that may not be the same as the prices per share in this offering. We may sell shares or other securities in any other offering at a price per share that is less than the prices per share paid by investors in this offering, and investors purchasing shares of our common stock or other securities in the future could have rights superior to existing shareholders. The price per share at which we sell additional shares of our common stock, or securities convertible or exchangeable into our common stock, in future transactions may be higher or lower than the prices per share paid by investors in this offering.

The shares of our common stock offered hereby will be sold in "at the market" offerings, and investors who buy shares of our common stock at different times will likely pay different prices.

Investors who purchase shares of our common stock in this offering at different times will likely pay different prices, and so may experience different levels of dilution and different outcomes in their investment results. We will have discretion, subject to market demand, to vary the timing, prices, and numbers of shares of our common stock sold in this offering. In addition, subject to the final determination by our board of directors or a committee thereof, there is no minimum or maximum sales price for shares of our common stock to be sold in this offering. Investors may experience a decline in the value of the shares of our common stock they purchase in this offering as a result of sales made at prices lower than the prices they paid.

FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

This prospectus or any related free writing prospectus and the documents incorporated by reference herein and therein may contain forward-looking statements, including statements regarding our intentions, beliefs, projections, outlook, analyses or current expectations concerning, among other things, our ongoing and planned preclinical development and clinical trials, the timing of and our ability to make regulatory filings and obtain and maintain regulatory approvals for our product candidates and any future product candidates, our intellectual property position, the degree of clinical utility of our product candidates, particularly in specific patient populations, our ability to develop and commercialize any product candidates, expectations regarding clinical trial data, statements regarding potential royalty and milestone payments, potential partnerships and collaborations, the advancement of our clinical and pre-clinical trials, our goals and milestones, our expectations regarding the size of the patient populations for our product candidates if approved for commercial use, our expectations regarding the effectiveness of our ADAPTIR and ADAPTIR-FLEX platforms, our ability to utilize any net operating losses, statements regarding our ability to rely on our directors' and officers' liability insurance, our results of operations, cash needs, spending of the net proceeds from this offering, financial condition, liquidity, prospects, growth and strategies, the industry in which we operate and the trends that may affect the industry or us. In some cases, you can identify forward-looking statements by terminology such as "believe," "will," "may," "estimate," "continue," "anticipate," "intend," "should," "plan," "might," "approximately," "expect," "predict," "could," "potentially" or the negative of these terms or other similar expressions. Forward-looking statements appear in a number of places throughout this prospectus and include statements regarding our intentions, beliefs, projections, outlook, analyses or current expectations concerning, among other things, our outlook, financial performance or financial condition, our technology and related pipeline, collaboration and partnership opportunities, commercial portfolio, our future growth rates, our ability to timely manufacture its products, spending of the proceeds from this offering, financial condition, liquidity, prospects, growth and strategies, the industry in which we operate and the trends that may affect the industry or us.

Discussions containing these forward-looking statements may be found, among other places, in the sections entitled "Business," "Risk Factors" and "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations," each incorporated by reference herein from our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K and our Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q, as well as any amendments thereto, filed with the SEC. These statements relate to future events or our future financial performance and involve known and unknown risks, uncertainties and other factors that could cause our actual results, levels of activity, performance or achievement to differ materially from those expressed or implied by these forward-looking statements. These statements reflect our current views with respect to future events and are based on assumptions and subject to risks and uncertainties. Given these uncertainties, you should not place undue reliance on these forward-looking statements. These forward-looking statements represent our estimates and assumptions only as of the date of the document containing the applicable statement and, except as required by law, we undertake no obligation to update or revise publicly any forward-looking statements, whether as a result of new information, future events or otherwise.

USE OF PROCEEDS

We may issue and sell shares of our common stock having aggregate sales proceeds of up to \$50,000,000 from time to time. Because there is no minimum offering amount required as a condition to close this offering, the actual total public offering amount, commissions and proceeds to us, if any, are not determinable at this time. We estimate that the maximum net proceeds from the sale of the shares of common stock that we are offering may be up to approximately \$48.4 million, after deducting Piper Sandler's commission and estimated offering expenses payable by us.

As of the date of this prospectus, we cannot specify with certainty all of the particular uses for the net proceeds to us from the sale of the securities offered by us hereunder and we will retain broad discretion over the use of the net proceeds from the sale of the securities offered by us hereunder. We currently intend to use the net proceeds from this offering primarily for research, development and manufacturing of product candidates, and for other general corporate purposes. Pending these uses, we expect to invest the net proceeds in short-term, interest-bearing securities.

DESCRIPTION OF CAPITAL STOCK

As of the date of this prospectus, our certificate of incorporation, authorizes us to issue up to 500,000,000 shares of common stock, \$0.001 par value per share, and 15,000,000 shares of preferred stock, \$0.001 par value per share. As of December 11, 2020, 4,378,759 shares of common stock were outstanding and no shares of preferred stock were outstanding.

The following summary describes the material terms of our capital stock. The summary is qualified in its entirety by reference to our certificate of incorporation and our bylaws.

Common Stock

Voting Rights.

Each holder of our common stock is entitled to one vote for each share on all matters submitted to a vote of the stockholders, including the election of directors. Under our certificate of incorporation and bylaws, our stockholders do not have cumulative voting rights. Because of this, the holders of a majority of the shares of common stock entitled to vote in any election of directors can elect all of the directors standing for election, if they should so choose.

Dividends.

Subject to preferences that may be applicable to any then-outstanding preferred stock, holders of common stock are entitled to receive ratably those dividends, if any, as may be declared from time to time by our board of directors out of legally available funds.

Liquidation.

In the event of our liquidation, dissolution or winding up, holders of common stock will be entitled to share ratably in the net assets legally available for distribution to stockholders after the payment of all of our debts and other liabilities and the satisfaction of any liquidation preference granted to the holders of any then-outstanding shares of preferred stock.

Rights and Preferences.

Holders of common stock have no preemptive, conversion or subscription rights and there are no redemption or sinking fund provisions applicable to our common stock. The rights, preferences and privileges of the holders of common stock are subject to, and may be adversely affected by, the rights of the holders of shares of any series of preferred stock that we may designate in the future.

Rights Plan

Each share of common stock includes an associated right pursuant to and as set forth in the Rights Agreement that we entered into with Broadridge Corporate Issuer Solutions, Inc. on November 8, 2020, or the Rights Agreement. Each right initially represent the right to purchase from us one one-thousandth of a share of our Series A Junior Participating Preferred Stock, par value \$0.001 per share. This right is not exercisable until the occurrence of certain events specified such Rights Agreement. The value attributable to these rights, if any, is reflected in the value of our common stock. The Rights and the Rights Agreement will expire upon the earliest to occur of (i) the date on which all of the Rights are redeemed, (ii) the date on which the Rights are exchanged, and (iii) the close of business on November 8, 2021.

Fully Paid and Nonassessable.

All of our outstanding shares of common stock are fully paid and nonassessable.

Preferred Stock

Under our certificate of incorporation, our board of directors is authorized by resolution to divide the preferred stock into one or more series and, with respect to each series, to determine the designations, powers, preferences, rights, qualifications, limitations and restrictions thereof, including the dividend rights, conversion or exchange rights, voting rights, redemption rights and terms, liquidation preferences, sinking fund provisions and the number of shares

constituting the series. Our board of directors can, without stockholder approval but subject to the terms of our certificate of incorporation, issue preferred stock with voting and other rights that could adversely affect the voting power of the holders of our common stock and which could have certain anti-takeover effects. Before we may issue any series of preferred stock, our board of directors will be required to adopt resolutions creating and designating such series of preferred stock.

The following summary of terms of our preferred stock is not complete. You should refer to the provisions of our certificate of incorporation, our bylaws and the resolutions containing the terms of each series of preferred stock, which have been or will be filed with the SEC at or prior to the time of issuance of such series and described in the applicable prospectus supplement. The applicable prospectus supplement may also state that any of the terms set forth herein are inapplicable to such series of preferred stock, provided that the information set forth in such prospectus supplement does not constitute a material change to the information herein such that it alters the nature of the offering or the securities being offered.

We will fix the designations, voting powers, preferences and rights of each series of preferred stock that we issue under this prospectus, as well as the qualifications, limitations or restrictions thereof, in the certificate of designation relating to that series. We will file as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part, or will incorporate by reference herein from reports that we file with the SEC, the form of any certificate of designation that describes the terms of the series of preferred stock we are offering. We will describe in the applicable prospectus supplement the terms of the series of preferred stock being offered, including, to the extent applicable:

- the title and stated value;
- the number of shares we are offering;
- the liquidation preference per share;
- the purchase price;
- the dividend rate, period and payment date and method of calculation for dividends;
- whether dividends will be cumulative or non-cumulative and, if cumulative, the date from which dividends will accumulate;
- the procedures for any auction and remarketing;
- the provisions for a sinking fund;
- the provisions for redemption or repurchase, if applicable, and any restrictions on our ability to exercise those redemption and repurchase rights;
- any listing of the preferred stock on any securities exchange or market;
- whether the preferred stock will be convertible into our common stock, and, if applicable, the conversion price, or how it will be calculated, and the conversion period;
- whether the preferred stock will be exchangeable into debt securities, and, if applicable, the exchange price, or how it will be calculated, and the exchange period;
- voting rights of the preferred stock;
- preemptive rights;
- restrictions on transfer, sale or other assignment;
- whether interests in the preferred stock will be represented by depositary shares;
- a discussion of material United States federal income tax considerations applicable to the preferred stock;
- the relative ranking and preferences of the preferred stock as to dividend rights and rights if we liquidate, dissolve or wind up our affairs;
- any limitations on the issuance of any class or series of preferred stock ranking senior to or on a parity with the series of preferred stock as to dividend rights and rights if we liquidate, dissolve or wind up our affairs; and
- any other specific terms, preferences, rights or limitations of, or restrictions on, the preferred stock.

If we issue shares of preferred stock under this prospectus, the shares will be fully paid and non-assessable.

The issuance of preferred stock could adversely affect the voting power of holders of common stock and reduce the likelihood that common stockholders will receive dividend payments and payments upon liquidation. The issuance could have the effect of decreasing the market price of the common stock. The issuance of preferred stock also could have the effect of delaying, deterring or preventing a change in control of us.

Options and Restricted Stock Units

As of December 11, 2020, (i) options to purchase an aggregate of 16,712 shares of common stock were outstanding under our 2016 Converted Equity Awards Incentive Plan; (ii) no restricted stock units were outstanding under our 2016 Converted Equity Awards Incentive Plan; (iii) options to purchase an aggregate of 41,244 shares of common stock were outstanding under our Amended and Restated 2016 Stock Incentive Plan; (iv) no restricted stock units were outstanding under our Amended and Restated 2016 Stock Incentive Plan; (v) options to purchase an aggregate of 150,090 shares of common stock were outstanding under our 2018 Stock Incentive Plan; (vi) 9,000 restricted stock units were outstanding under our 2018 Stock Incentive Plan; and (vii) an additional 198,907 shares were reserved for future issuance under our 2018 Stock Incentive Plan.

Warrants

As of December 11, 2020, we have issued and outstanding warrants to purchase 436,844 shares of our common stock at an exercise price of \$18.20 per share. These warrants are immediately exercisable and expire on March 11, 2024. The exercise price and the number of shares of common stock purchasable upon the exercise of the warrants are subject to adjustment upon the occurrence of specific events, including sales of additional shares of common stock, stock dividends, stock splits, reclassifications and combinations of our common stock. If, at any time warrants are outstanding, any fundamental transaction occurs, as described in the warrants, the successor entity must assume the obligations to the warrant holders. Additionally, in the event of a fundamental transaction, other than one in which a successor entity that is a publicly traded corporation assumes the warrants, each holder will have the right to require us, or our successor, to repurchase the warrants for an amount of cash equal to the Black-Scholes value of the remaining unexercised portion of such warrants. Holders of the warrants do not have the rights or privileges of holders of our common shares, including any voting rights, until they exercise their warrants, with exceptions for participation in rights offerings or extraordinary distributions.

Stockholder Registration Rights

Certain holders of shares of our common stock are entitled to certain rights with respect to registration of such shares under the Securities Act. These shares are referred to as registrable securities. The holders of these registrable securities possess registration rights described in additional detail below pursuant to the terms of a registration rights agreement.

The registration of shares of our common stock pursuant to the exercise of registration rights described below would enable the holders to trade these shares without restriction under the Securities Act when the applicable registration statement is declared effective. We will pay the registration expenses, other than underwriting discounts, selling commissions and stock transfer taxes, of the shares registered pursuant to the demand and piggyback registration rights described below.

Generally, in an underwritten offering, the managing underwriter, if any, has the right, subject to specified conditions, to limit the number of shares the holders may include.

Demand Registration Rights

The holders of the registrable securities are entitled to certain demand registration rights. At any time, the holders of at least 20% of the registrable securities, on not more than two occasions, may request that we register all or a portion of their shares, subject to certain specified exceptions. Such request for registration must cover securities the aggregate offering price of which, before payment of underwriting discounts and commissions, exceeds \$10,000,000.

Piggyback Registration Rights

In connection with the filing of the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part, the holders of the registrable securities were entitled to, and the necessary percentage of holders waived, their rights to notice of such filing and to include their shares of registrable securities in the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part. If we propose to register for offer and sale any of our securities under the Securities Act in a future offering, either for our own account or for the account of other security holders, the holders of these shares will be entitled to certain “piggyback” registration rights allowing them to include their shares in such registration, subject to certain marketing and other limitations. As a result, whenever we propose to file a registration statement under the Securities Act, including a registration statement on Form S-3 as discussed below, other than with respect to a demand registration or a registration statement on Forms S-4 or S-8 or related to stock issued upon conversion of debt securities, the holders of these shares are entitled to notice of the registration and have the right, subject to limitations that the underwriters may impose on the number of shares included in the registration, to include their shares in the registration.

Lincoln Park Registration Rights

On December 20, 2018, we entered into a Registration Rights Agreement with Lincoln Park Capital Fund, LLC, or Lincoln Park, pursuant to which we agreed to file with the SEC one or more registration statements as necessary to register for sale under the Securities Act shares of common stock that we issued or may issue to Lincoln Park pursuant to the Purchase Agreement we entered into with Lincoln Park on December 20, 2018. On January 1, 2019, we filed a registration statement registering 6,000,000 of such shares of common stock for resale, and such registration statement was declared effective on February 13, 2019.

Anti-Takeover Effects of Our Charter Documents and Some Provisions of Delaware Law

Delaware Law

We are subject to Section 203 of the Delaware General Corporation Law, which prohibits a Delaware corporation from engaging in any business combination with any interested stockholder for a period of three years after the date that such stockholder became an interested stockholder, with the following exceptions:

- before such date, the board of directors of the corporation approved either the business combination or the transaction that resulted in the stockholder becoming an interested stockholder;
- upon completion of the transaction that resulted in the stockholder becoming an interested stockholder, the interested stockholder owned at least 85% of the voting stock of the corporation outstanding at the time the transaction began, excluding for purposes of determining the voting stock outstanding (but not the outstanding voting stock owned by the interested stockholder) those shares owned (1) by persons who are directors and also officers and (2) employee stock plans in which employee participants do not have the right to determine confidentially whether shares held subject to the plan will be tendered in a tender or exchange offer; or
- on or after such date, the business combination is approved by the board of directors and authorized at an annual or special meeting of the stockholders, and not by written consent, by the affirmative vote of at least 66 2/3% of the outstanding voting stock that is not owned by the interested stockholder.

In general, Section 203 defines a “business combination” to include the following:

- any merger or consolidation involving the corporation and the interested stockholder;
- any sale, transfer, pledge or other disposition of 10% or more of the assets of the corporation involving the interested stockholder;
- subject to certain exceptions, any transaction that results in the issuance or transfer by the corporation of any stock of the corporation to the interested stockholder;
- any transaction involving the corporation that has the effect of increasing the proportionate share of the stock or any class or series of the corporation beneficially owned by the interested stockholder; or
- the receipt by the interested stockholder of the benefit of any loans, advances, guarantees, pledges or other financial benefits by or through the corporation.

In general, Section 203 defines an “interested stockholder” as an entity or person who, together with the person’s affiliates and associates, beneficially owns, or within three years prior to the time of determination of interested stockholder status did own, 15% or more of the outstanding voting stock of the corporation.

Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws

Our certificate of incorporation provides for our board of directors to be divided into three classes with staggered three-year terms. Only one class of directors is elected at each annual meeting of our stockholders, with the other classes continuing for the remainder of their respective three-year terms. Because our stockholders do not have cumulative voting rights, stockholders holding a majority of the shares of common stock outstanding are able to elect all of our directors. Our certificate of incorporation and our bylaws also provide that directors may be removed by the stockholders only for cause upon the vote of 75% of our outstanding common stock.

Furthermore, the authorized number of directors may be changed only by resolution of the board of directors, and vacancies and newly created directorships on the board of directors may, except as otherwise required by law or determined by the board, only be filled by a majority vote of the directors then serving on the board, even though less than a quorum.

Our certificate of incorporation and bylaws also provide that all stockholder actions must be effected at a duly called meeting of stockholders and eliminates the right of stockholders to act by written consent without a meeting. Our bylaws also provide that only our chairman of the board, chief executive officer or the board of directors pursuant to a resolution adopted by a majority of the total number of authorized directors may call a special meeting of stockholders.

Our bylaws also provide that stockholders seeking to present proposals before a meeting of stockholders to nominate candidates for election as directors at a meeting of stockholders must provide timely advance notice in writing, and specify requirements as to the form and content of a stockholder’s notice.

Our certificate of incorporation and bylaws provide that the stockholders cannot amend many of the provisions described above except by a vote of 75% or more of our outstanding common stock.

The combination of these provisions makes it more difficult for our existing stockholders to replace our board of directors as well as for another party to obtain control of us by replacing our board of directors. Since our board of directors has the power to retain and discharge our officers, these provisions could also make it more difficult for existing stockholders or another party to effect a change in management. In addition, as more fully described below, authorization of undesignated preferred stock makes it possible for our board of directors to issue preferred stock with voting or other rights or preferences that could impede the success of any attempt to change our control.

Shareholder Rights Plan

On November 8, 2020, our Board adopted the Rights Plan. The Rights Plan works by causing substantial dilution to any person or group that acquires beneficial ownership of ten percent (10%) or more of our common stock without the approval of the Board. As a result, the overall effect of the Rights Plan and the issuance of the rights pursuant to the Rights Plan may be to render more difficult or discourage a merger, tender or exchange offer or other business combination involving the Company that is not approved by the Board. The Rights Plan is not intended to interfere with any merger, tender or exchange offer or other business combination approved by the Board. The Rights Plan also does not prevent the Board from considering any offer that it considers to be in the best interest of its stockholders.

These provisions are intended to enhance the likelihood of continued stability in the composition of our board of directors and its policies and to discourage coercive takeover practices and inadequate takeover bids. These provisions are also designed to reduce our vulnerability to hostile takeovers and to discourage certain tactics that may be used in proxy fights. However, such provisions could have the effect of discouraging others from making tender offers for our shares and may have the effect of delaying changes in our control or management. As a consequence, these provisions may also inhibit fluctuations in the market price of our stock that could result from actual or rumored takeover attempts. We believe that the benefits of these provisions, including increased protection of our potential ability to negotiate with the proponent of an unfriendly or unsolicited proposal to acquire or restructure our company, outweigh the disadvantages of discouraging takeover proposals, because negotiation of takeover proposals could result in an improvement of their terms.

The Rights and the Rights Agreement will expire upon the earliest to occur of (i) the date on which all of the Rights are redeemed, (ii) the date on which the Rights are exchanged, and (iii) the close of business on November 8, 2021.

Transfer Agent and Registrar

The transfer agent and registrar for our common stock is Broadridge Financial Solutions, Inc. The transfer agent's address is P.O. Box 1342, Brentwood, NY 11717. The transfer agent for any series of preferred stock that we may offer under this prospectus will be named and described in the prospectus supplement for that series.

Listing on the Nasdaq Capital Market

Our common stock is listed on the Nasdaq Capital Market under the symbol "APVO."

PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION

On December 14, 2020, we entered into the Equity Distribution Agreement with Piper Sandler, as our sales agent, which has been filed as an exhibit to our registration statement on Form S-3 of which this prospectus forms a part. Piper Sandler will use commercially reasonable efforts to sell on our behalf all shares of our common stock requested to be sold by us, consistent with its normal trading and sales practices, under the terms and subject to the conditions set forth in the Equity Distribution Agreement. We may instruct Piper Sandler not to sell our common stock if the sales cannot be effected at or above the price designated by us in any instruction. We or Piper Sandler may suspend the offering of our common stock upon proper notice and subject to other conditions, as further described in the Equity Distribution Agreement.

Piper Sandler may sell our common stock by any method permitted by law deemed to be an “at the market offering” as defined in Rule 415(a)(4) promulgated under the Securities Act, including sales made directly on or through the Nasdaq Capital Market or on any other existing trading market for our common stock. Each such confirmation will include the number of shares of our common stock sold on such day, the net proceeds to us and the compensation payable by us to Piper Sandler in connection with such sales.

We will pay Piper Sandler commissions for its services in acting as sales agent in the sale of our common stock. Piper Sandler will be entitled to compensation in an amount up to 3.0% of the gross sales price of all common stock sold through it as sales agent under the Equity Distribution Agreement. We have also agreed to reimburse Piper Sandler for the out-of-pocket reasonable fees and disbursements of its legal counsel, in an amount not to exceed \$50,000, and for FINRA related expenses, in an amount not to exceed \$15,000. We estimate that the total expenses for this offering, excluding compensation payable to Piper Sandler under the terms of the Equity Distribution Agreement, will be approximately \$100,000.

Settlement for sales of our common stock will occur on the second business day following the date on which any such sales are made, or on some other date that is agreed upon by us and Piper Sandler in connection with a particular transaction, in return for payment of the net proceeds to us. There is no arrangement for funds to be received in an escrow, trust or similar arrangement.

We will report at least quarterly the number of shares of our common stock sold through Piper Sandler, as sales agent, under the Equity Distribution Agreement, the net proceeds to us and the compensation paid by us to Piper Sandler in connection with such sales.

Piper Sandler and its affiliates have from time to time provided, and may in the future provide, various investment banking, commercial banking, fiduciary and advisory services for us for which they have received, and may in the future receive, customary fees and expenses. Piper Sandler and its affiliates may from time to time engage in other transactions with and perform services for us in the ordinary course of their business.

In connection with the sale of our common stock on our behalf, Piper Sandler will be deemed to be an underwriter within the meaning of the Securities Act, and the compensation paid by us to Piper Sandler will be deemed to be underwriting commissions or discounts. We have agreed to indemnify Piper Sandler against specified liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act, or to contribute to payments that Piper Sandler may be required to make because of such liabilities.

The offering of our common stock pursuant to the Equity Distribution Agreement will terminate upon the termination of the Equity Distribution Agreement. The Equity Distribution Agreement may be terminated by Piper Sandler or us at any time on the close of business on the date of receipt of written notice, and by Piper Sandler at any time in certain circumstances, including any suspension or limitation on the trading of our common stock on the Nasdaq Capital Market, as further described therein.

LEGAL MATTERS

The validity of the securities offered hereby will be passed upon for us by Morgan, Lewis & Bockius LLP, Boston, Massachusetts. Latham & Watkins LLP, Chicago, Illinois, has acted as counsel for Piper Sandler in connection with this offering.

EXPERTS

The consolidated financial statements of Aptevo Therapeutics Inc. included in Aptevo Therapeutics' Current Report (Form 8-K) filed on December 14, 2020 have been audited by Ernst & Young LLP, independent registered public accounting firm, as set forth in their report thereon (which contains an explanatory paragraph describing conditions that raise substantial doubt about the Company's ability to continue as a going concern as described in Note 1 to the consolidated financial statements), included therein, and incorporated herein by reference. Such consolidated financial statements are incorporated herein by reference in reliance upon such report given on the authority of such firm as experts in accounting and auditing.

WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION

This prospectus is part of a registration statement on Form S-3 we filed with the SEC under the Securities Act and does not contain all the information set forth in the registration statement. Whenever a reference is made in this prospectus to any of our contracts, agreements or other documents, the reference may not be complete and you should refer to the exhibits that are a part of the registration statement or the exhibits to the reports or other documents incorporated by reference therein. For further information with respect to us and the common stock we are offering under this prospectus, we refer you to the registration statement and the exhibits and schedules filed as a part of the registration statement. Neither we nor any agent, underwriter or dealer has authorized any person to provide you with different information. We are not making an offer of these securities in any state where the offer is not permitted. You should not assume that the information in this prospectus is accurate as of any date other than the date on the front page of this prospectus, regardless of the time of delivery of this prospectus or any sale of the securities offered by this prospectus.

We are subject to the information reporting requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or the Exchange Act, and we are required to file reports, proxy statements and other information with the SEC. These reports, proxy statements, and other information are available for inspection and copying at the SEC's website at <http://www.sec.gov>. We also maintain a website at www.aptevo.com, at which you may access these materials free of charge as soon as reasonably practicable after they are electronically filed with, or furnished to, the SEC. Information contained on or accessible through our website is not a part of this prospectus, and the inclusion of our website address in this prospectus is an inactive textual reference only.

INCORPORATION OF CERTAIN INFORMATION BY REFERENCE

The SEC allows us to "incorporate by reference" the information we file with it, which means that we can disclose important information to you by referring you to those documents instead of having to repeat the information in this prospectus. The information incorporated by reference is considered to be part of this prospectus, and later information that we file with the SEC will automatically update and supersede this information. We incorporate by reference the documents listed below and any future filings (including those made after the initial filing of the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part and prior to the effectiveness of such registration statement) we will make with the SEC under Sections 13(a), 13(c), 14, or 15(d) of the Exchange Act until the termination of the offering of the shares covered by this prospectus (other than information furnished under Item 2.02 or Item 7.01 of Form 8-K):

- our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2019 filed with the SEC on March 25, 2020;
- our Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q filed with the SEC on May 13, 2020, August 14, 2020 and November 10, 2020;

- our Current Reports on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on March 2, 2020, March 13, 2020, March 27, 2020, April 13, 2020, June 1, 2020, June 25, 2020, August 6, 2020, August 13, 2020, August 27, 2020, November 9, 2020 (under Items 1.01, 3.03, 5.03, and 8.01), November 30, 2020, December 2, 2020, and December 14, 2020; and
- the description of our common stock, which is contained in our registration statement on Form 10 initially filed with the SEC on April 15, 2016 (File No. 001-37746) under the Exchange Act and declared effective on July 15, 2016, including any amendment or report filed for the purpose of updating such description.

You can request a copy of these filings, at no cost, by writing or telephoning us at the following address or telephone number:

Aptevo Therapeutics Inc.
2401 4th Avenue, Suite 1050
Seattle, WA 98121
Attn: Acting General Counsel
(206) 838-0500

This prospectus is part of a registration statement we filed with the SEC. That registration statement and the exhibits filed along with the registration statement contain more information about us and the shares in this offering. Because information about documents referred to in this prospectus is not always complete, you should read the full documents which are filed as exhibits to the registration statement. You may read and copy the full registration statement and its exhibits at the SEC's website.

\$50,000,000



Common Stock

Prospectus

Piper Sandler

, 20

PART II
INFORMATION NOT REQUIRED IN THE PROSPECTUS

Item 14. Other Expenses of Issuance and Distribution.

The following sets forth the estimated costs and expenses, all of which shall be borne by the registrant, in connection with the offering of the securities pursuant to this Registration Statement:

SEC Registration Fee	\$ 7,871.86
FINRA Fees	—
Legal Fees and Expenses	(1)
Listing Fees	(1)
Accounting Fees	(1)
Printing and Miscellaneous Fees	(1)
Total	<u>\$ (1)</u>

(1) These fees will be dependent on the type of securities offered and the number of offerings and, therefore, cannot be estimated at this time. The applicable prospectus supplement will set forth the estimated amount of expenses of any offerings of securities.

Item 15. Indemnification of Directors and Officers.

Section 145 of the Delaware General Corporation Law, or the DGCL, authorizes a court to award, or a corporation's board of directors to grant, indemnity to directors and officers in terms sufficiently broad to permit such indemnification under certain circumstances for liabilities, including reimbursement for expenses incurred, arising under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or the Securities Act.

The registrant's certificate of incorporation and bylaws each provide for indemnification of the registrant's directors, officers, employees and other agents to the maximum extent permitted by the DGCL.

The registrant has entered into indemnification agreements with its directors and officers whereby it has agreed to indemnify its directors and officers to the fullest extent permitted by law, including indemnification against expenses and liabilities incurred in legal proceedings to which the director or officer was, or is threatened to be made, a party by reason of the fact that such director or officer is or was a director, officer, employee or agent of the registrant, provided that such director or officer acted in good faith and in a manner that the director or officer reasonably believed to be in, or not opposed to, the best interest of the registrant. At present, there is no pending litigation or proceeding involving a director or officer of the registrant regarding which indemnification is sought, nor is the registrant aware of any threatened litigation that may result in claims for indemnification.

The registrant maintains insurance policies that indemnify its directors and officers against various liabilities arising under the Securities Act and the Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, that might be incurred by any director or officer in his or her capacity as such.

The underwriting agreement(s) that the registrant may enter into may provide for indemnification by any underwriters of the registrant, its directors, its officers who sign the registration statement and the registrant's controlling persons for some liabilities, including liabilities arising under the Securities Act.

Item 16. Exhibits.

(d)

Exhibit

Number	Description
1.1*	Form of Underwriting Agreement.
1.2	Equity Distribution Agreement dated as of December 14, 2020, by and between Aptevo Therapeutics Inc. and Piper Sandler & Co.
3.1(1)	Restated Certificate of Incorporation of Aptevo Therapeutics Inc.
3.2(2)	Amended and Restated By-Laws of Aptevo Therapeutics Inc.
4.1	Reference is made to Exhibits 3.1 and 3.2.
4.2(1)	Registration Rights Agreement, dated as of August 1, 2016, by and among Aptevo Therapeutics Inc. and certain of its stockholders.
4.3(3)	Registration Rights Agreement, dated December 20, 2018, by and between Aptevo Therapeutics Inc. and Lincoln Park Capital Fund, LLC.
4.4(4)	Specimen Common Stock Certificate.
4.5(5)	Certificate of Designation of Series A Junior Participating Preferred Stock of Aptevo Therapeutics Inc.
4.6(6)	Form of Warrant.
4.7(6)	Form of Pre-Funded Warrant.
4.8*	Specimen Preferred Stock Certificate and Form of Certificate of Designation of Preferred Stock.
4.9	Form of Indenture.
4.10*	Form of Debt Securities.
4.11*	Form of Subordinate Note.
4.12	Form of Common Stock Warrant Agreement and Warrant Certificate.
4.13	Form of Preferred Stock Warrant Agreement and Warrant Certificate.
4.14	Form of Debt Securities Warrant Agreement and Warrant Certificate.
5.1	Opinion of Morgan, Lewis & Bockius LLP.
23.1	Consent of Ernst & Young LLP, Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm.
23.2	Consent of Morgan, Lewis & Bockius LLP is contained in Exhibit 5.1 to this Registration Statement.
24.1	Power of Attorney is contained on the signature pages.
25.1**	Statement of Eligibility of Trustee under the Indenture.

* To be filed by amendment or as an exhibit to a Current Report on Form 8-K and incorporated herein by reference, if applicable.

** To be filed separately under electronic form type 305B2, if applicable.

- (1) Previously filed as an exhibit to the Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on August 2, 2016 (File No. 001-37746) and incorporated by reference herein.
 - (2) Previously filed as an exhibit to the Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on November 30, 2020 (File No. 001-37746) and incorporated by reference herein.
 - (3) Previously filed as an exhibit to the Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on December 24, 2018 (File No. 001-37746) and incorporated by reference herein.
 - (4) Previously filed as an exhibit to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form 10, as amended, filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on June 29, 2016 and incorporated by reference herein.
 - (5) Previously filed as an exhibit to the Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on November 9, 2020 (File No. 001-37746) and incorporated by reference herein.
 - (6) Previously filed as an exhibit to the Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on March 11, 2019 (File No. 001-37746) and incorporated by reference herein.
-

Item 17. Undertakings

The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes:

(a) To file, during any period in which offers or sales are being made, a post-effective amendment to this registration statement:

(i) to include any prospectus required by Section 10(a)(3) of the Securities Act of 1933;

(ii) to reflect in the prospectus any facts or events arising after the effective date of the registration statement (or the most recent post-effective amendment thereof) which, individually or in the aggregate, represent a fundamental change in the information set forth in the registration statement. Notwithstanding the foregoing, any increase or decrease in volume of securities offered (if the total dollar value of securities offered would not exceed that which was registered) and any deviation from the low or high end of the estimated maximum offering range may be reflected in the form of prospectus filed with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424(b) if, in the aggregate, the changes in volume and price represent no more than 20% change in the maximum aggregate offering price set forth in the "Calculation of Registration Fee" table in the effective registration statement; and

(iii) to include any material information with respect to the plan of distribution not previously disclosed in the registration statement or any material change to such information in the registration statement;

provided, however, that paragraphs (i), (ii) and (iii) of this section do not apply if the registration statement is on Form S-3 or Form F-3 and the information required to be included in a post-effective amendment by those paragraphs is contained in reports filed with or furnished to the Commission by the registrant pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 that are incorporated by reference in the registration statement, or is contained in a form of prospectus filed pursuant to Rule 424(b) that is part of the registration statement.

(b) That, for the purpose of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, each such post-effective amendment shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.

(c) To remove from registration by means of a post-effective amendment any of the securities being registered which remain unsold at the termination of the offering.

(d) That, for the purpose of determining liability under the Securities Act of 1933 to any purchaser:

(i) Each prospectus filed by the registrant pursuant to Rule 424(b)(3) shall be deemed to be part of the registration statement as of the date the filed prospectus was deemed part of and included in the registration statement; and

(ii) Each prospectus required to be filed pursuant to Rule 424(b)(2), (b)(5) or (b)(7) as part of a registration statement in reliance on Rule 430B relating to an offering made pursuant to Rule 415(a)(1)(i), (vii) or (x) for the purpose of providing the information required by Section 10(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 shall be deemed to be part of and included in the registration statement as of the earlier of the date such form of prospectus is first used after effectiveness or the date of the first contract of sale of securities in the offering described in the prospectus. As provided in Rule 430B, for liability purposes of the issuer and any person that is at that date an underwriter, such date shall be deemed to be a new effective date of the registration statement relating to the securities in the registration statement to which that prospectus relates, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof. *Provided, however,* that no statement made in a registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement or made in a document incorporated or deemed incorporated by reference into the registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement will, as to a purchaser with a time of contract of sale prior to such effective date, supersede or modify any statement that was made in the registration statement or prospectus that was part of the registration statement or made in any such document immediately prior to such effective date.

(e) That, for the purpose of determining liability of the registrant under the Securities Act of 1933 to any purchaser in the initial distribution of the securities, the undersigned registrant undertakes that in a primary offering of securities of the undersigned registrant pursuant to this registration statement, regardless of the underwriting method

used to sell the securities to the purchaser, if the securities are offered or sold to such purchaser by means of any of the following communications, the undersigned registrant will be a seller to the purchaser and will be considered to offer or sell such securities to such purchaser:

- (i) Any preliminary prospectus or prospectus of the undersigned registrant relating to the offering required to be filed pursuant to Rule 424;
 - (ii) Any free writing prospectus relating to the offering prepared by or on behalf of the undersigned registrant or used or referred to by the undersigned registrant;
 - (iii) The portion of any other free writing prospectus relating to the offering containing material information about the undersigned registrant or its securities provided by or on behalf of the undersigned registrant; and
 - (iv) Any other communication that is an offer in the offering made by the undersigned registrant to the purchaser.
- (f) The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes that, for purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, each filing of the registrant's annual report pursuant to Section 13(a) or Section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (and, where applicable, each filing of an employee benefit plan's annual report pursuant to Section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934) that is incorporated by reference in the registration statement shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.
- (g) That, for purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act, (i) the information omitted from the form of prospectus filed as part of the registration statement in reliance upon Rule 430A and contained in the form of prospectus filed by the registrant pursuant to Rule 424(b)(1) or (4) or 497(h) under the Securities Act shall be deemed to be a part of the registration statement as of the time it was declared effective; and (ii) each post-effective amendment that contains a form of prospectus shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.
- (h) To file an application for the purpose of determining the eligibility of the trustee to act under subsection (a) of Section 310 of the Trust Indenture Act in accordance with the rules and regulations prescribed by the Commission under Section 305(b)(2) of the Trust Indenture Act.
- (i) Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act of 1933 may be permitted to directors, officers and controlling persons of the registrant pursuant to the foregoing provisions, or otherwise, the registrant has been advised that in the opinion of the Securities and Exchange Commission such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Act and is therefore unenforceable. In the event that a claim for indemnification against such liabilities (other than the payment by the registrant of expenses incurred or paid by a director, officer or controlling person of the registrant in the successful defense of any action, suit or proceeding) is asserted by such director, officer or controlling person in connection with the securities being registered, the registrant will, unless in the opinion of its counsel the matter has been settled by controlling precedent, submit to a court of appropriate jurisdiction the question whether such indemnification by it is against public policy as expressed in the Act and will be governed by the final adjudication of such issue.
-

SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, the registrant certifies that it has reasonable grounds to believe that it meets all of the requirements for filing on Form S-3 and has duly caused this registration statement to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, in the City of Seattle, Washington, on December 14, 2020.

APTEVO THERAPEUTICS INC.

By: /s/ Marvin L. White
Marvin L. White
President and Chief Executive Officer

KNOW ALL PERSONS BY THESE PRESENTS, that each person whose signature appears below constitutes and appoints Marvin L. White and Jeffrey Lamothe, his or her true and lawful agent, proxy and attorney-in-fact, each acting alone, with full power of substitution and resubstitution, for him or her and in his or her name, place and stead, in any and all capacities, to (i) act on, sign, and file with the SEC any and all amendments (including post-effective amendments) to this registration statement together with all schedules and exhibits thereto, (ii) act on, sign and file such certificates, instruments, agreements and other documents as may be necessary or appropriate in connection therewith, (iii) act on and file any supplement to any prospectus included in this registration statement or any such amendment or any subsequent registration statement filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act, and (iv) take any and all actions which may be necessary or appropriate to be done, as fully for all intents and purposes as he or she might or could do in person, hereby approving, ratifying and confirming all that such agent, proxy and attorney-in-fact or any of his substitutes may lawfully do or cause to be done by virtue thereof.

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act, this Registration Statement has been signed by the following persons in the capacities and on the dates indicated:

Signatures	Title	Date
<u>/s/ Marvin L. White</u> Marvin L. White	President, Chief Executive Officer and Director (<i>Principal Executive Officer</i>)	December 14, 2020
<u>/s/ Jeffrey G. Lamothe</u> Jeffrey G. Lamothe	Chief Financial Officer (<i>Principal Financial and Accounting Officer</i>)	December 14, 2020
<u>/s/ Fuad El-Hibri</u> Fuad El-Hibri	Chairman of the Board of Directors	December 14, 2020
<u>/s/ Daniel J. Abdun-Nabi</u> Daniel J. Abdun-Nabi	Director	December 14, 2020
<u>/s/ Grady Grant, III</u> Grady Grant, III	Director	December 14, 2020
<u>/s/ Zsolt Harsanyi, Ph. D.</u> Zsolt Harsanyi, Ph. D.	Director	December 14, 2020
<u>/s/ Barbara Lopez Kunz</u> Barbara Lopez Kunz	Director	December 14, 2020
<u>/s/ John E. Niederhuber, M.D.</u> John E. Niederhuber, M.D.	Director	December 14, 2020

APTEVO THERAPEUTICS INC.

EQUITY DISTRIBUTION AGREEMENT

December 14, 2020

PIPER SANDLER & CO.
U.S. Bancorp Center
800 Nicollet Mall
Minneapolis, Minnesota 55402

Ladies and Gentlemen:

As further set forth in this equity distribution agreement (this "**Agreement**"), Aptevco Therapeutics Inc., a company organized under the laws of Delaware (the "**Company**"), proposes to issue and sell from time to time through Piper Sandler & Co., as sales agent (the "**Agent**"), the Company's common stock, par value \$0.001 per share (the "**Common Stock**"), on the terms set forth herein. The shares of Common Stock to be sold pursuant to this Agreement are herein called the "**Shares**." Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained herein, the parties hereto agree that compliance with the limitation set forth in Section 2 hereof on the number of Shares issued and sold hereunder shall be the sole responsibility of the Company, and the Agent shall have no obligation in connection therewith.

The Company hereby confirms its agreement with the Agent with respect to the sale of the Shares.

1. Representations and Warranties of the Company.

(a) The Company represents and warrants to, and agrees with, the Agent that as of the date hereof, each Representation Date (as defined in Section 3(o) hereof), each date on which a Placement Notice (as defined in Section 2(a)(i) hereof) is given and each date on which Shares are sold hereunder as follows:

(i) **Registration Statement and Prospectus.** The Company has filed or will file, in accordance with the provisions of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, and the rules and regulations thereunder (collectively, the "**Securities Act**"), with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "**Commission**") a registration statement on Form S-3, including a base prospectus, relating to certain securities, including the Common Stock, to be issued from time to time by the Company, and which incorporates or will incorporate by reference therein documents that the Company has filed or will file in accordance with the provisions of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, and the rules and regulations thereunder (collectively, the "**Exchange Act**"). The Company has prepared a prospectus included as part of such registration statement specifically relating to the Shares (the "**Equity Distribution Prospectus**"). The Company has furnished or will furnish to the Agent, for use by the Agent, copies of the Equity Distribution Prospectus relating to the Shares. Except where the context otherwise requires, such registration statement, as

amended when it becomes effective, including all documents filed as part thereof or incorporated by reference therein, and including any information contained in a Prospectus (as defined below) subsequently filed with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424(b) under the Securities Act or deemed to be a part of such registration statement pursuant to Rule 430B under the Securities Act, and including any registration statement filed to register Shares pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act (a “**Rule 462(b) Registration Statement**”), is herein called the “**Registration Statement**.” The Equity Distribution Prospectus, including all documents incorporated by reference therein, included in the Registration Statement, as it may be supplemented by a prospectus supplement, in the form in which such Equity Distribution Prospectus and/or prospectus supplement have most recently been filed by the Company with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424(b) under the Securities Act, together with any “issuer free writing prospectus” (as defined in Rule 433 under the Securities Act) relating to the Shares, if any, that (i) is required to be filed by the Company with the Commission or (ii) is exempt from filing pursuant to Rule 433(d)(5)(i) under the Securities Act, in each case in the form filed or required to be filed with the Commission or, if not required to be filed, in the form retained in the Company’s records pursuant to Rule 433(g) under the Securities Act, is herein called the “**Prospectus**.” Any reference herein to the Registration Statement, the Prospectus or any amendment or supplement thereto shall be deemed to refer to and include the documents incorporated by reference therein, and any reference herein to the terms “amend,” “amendment” or “supplement” with respect to the Registration Statement or the Prospectus shall be deemed to refer to and include the filing after the date hereof of any document with the Commission deemed to be incorporated by reference therein or otherwise deemed to be a part thereof under the Securities Act. All references herein to the Registration Statement, the Prospectus or to any amendment or supplement thereto shall be deemed to include any copy filed with the Commission pursuant the Electronic Data Gathering Analysis and Retrieval System (“**EDGAR**”).

(ii) *Continuing Effectiveness of Registration Statement.* The Registration Statement and any registration statement filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act (each, a “**Rule 462(b) Registration Statement**”) have been or will be declared effective by the Commission under the Securities Act. The Company has complied or will comply, to the Commission’s satisfaction, with all requests of the Commission for additional or supplemental information. No stop order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement or any Rule 462(b) Registration Statement is in effect and no proceedings for such purpose have been instituted, are pending or, to the knowledge of the Company, are contemplated or threatened by the Commission. The Company meets the requirements for use of Form S-3 under the Securities Act. The sale of the Shares hereunder meets the requirements of General Instruction I.B.1 or I.B.6 of Form S-3 under the Securities Act.

(iii) *No Material Misstatements or Omissions.* The Prospectus when filed complied and, as amended or supplemented, if applicable, will comply in all material respects with the Securities Act. Each of the Registration Statement, any Rule 462(b) Registration Statement and any post-effective amendment or supplement thereto, at the time it became effective, at its date and at each Settlement Date (as defined in Section 2(a)(vii) hereof), complied in all material respects with the Securities Act and did not and

will not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading. The Prospectus, as amended or supplemented, as of its date, did not and, as of each Settlement Date, will not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading. The representations and warranties set forth in the two immediately preceding sentences do not apply to statements in or omissions from the Registration Statement, any Rule 462(b) Registration Statement or any post-effective amendment thereto, or the Prospectus or any amendment or supplement thereto, made in reliance upon and in conformity with information relating to the Agent furnished to the Company in writing by the Agent expressly for use therein. There are no contracts or other documents required to be described in the Prospectus or to be filed as exhibits to the Registration Statement which have not been described or filed as required.

(iv) *Eligible Issuer.* The Company is not an “ineligible issuer” (as defined in Rule 405 under the Securities Act) as of the eligibility determination date for purposes of Rules 164 and 433 under the Securities Act with respect to the offering of the Shares.

(v) *Emerging Growth Company.* The Company is an “emerging growth company” (as defined in Section 2(a) of the Securities Act).

(vi) *Financial Statements.* The financial statements (including the related notes and supporting schedules) to be included or incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus comply as to form in all material respects with the requirements of Regulation S-X under the Securities Act (“**Regulation S-X**”) and present fairly, in all material respects, the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the entities purported to be shown thereby at the dates and for the periods indicated and have been prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States (“**GAAP**”) applied on a consistent basis throughout the periods involved. There are no financial statements (historical or pro forma) that are required to be included in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus that are not included as required. The interactive data in eXtensible Business Reporting Language (“**XBRL**”) included or incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus fairly present the information called for in all material respects and have been prepared in accordance with the rules and guidelines of the Commission applicable thereto.

(vii) *No Off-Balance Sheet Transactions.* There are no transactions, arrangements or other relationships between and/or among the Company, and/or, to the knowledge of the Company, any of its affiliates and any unconsolidated entity, including, but not limited to, any structural finance, special purpose or limited purpose entity (each, an “**Off-Balance Sheet Transaction**”) that could reasonably be expected to materially affect the Company’s liquidity or the availability of or requirements for its capital resources, including those Off-Balance Sheet Transactions described in the Commission’s Statement about Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Conditions and

Results of Operations (Release Nos. 33-8056; 34-45321; FR-61), and are required to be described in the Prospectus, which have not been described as required.

(viii) *Auditor Independence.* Ernst & Young LLP, who have certified certain financial statements of the Company and its consolidated subsidiaries and whose report appears in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, and Moss Adams LLP are independent public accountants as required by the Securities Act and the Public Accounting Oversight Board.

(ix) *No Material Adverse Effect.* The Company and each of its subsidiaries (as defined in Rule 405 under the Securities Act) has been duly organized, validly existing and in good standing under the laws of their respective jurisdictions of organization, except where the failure to be so duly organized, duly organized, validly existing and in good standing would not reasonably be expected to have Material Adverse Effect (as defined below). The Company and each of its subsidiaries are, and will be, duly licensed or qualified as a foreign corporation for the transaction of business and in good standing under the laws of each other jurisdiction in which their respective ownership or lease of property or the conduct of their respective businesses requires such license or qualification, and have all corporate power and authority necessary to own or hold their respective properties and to conduct their respective businesses as described in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, except where the failure to be so qualified or in good standing or have such power or authority would not, individually or in the aggregate, have a material adverse effect or reasonably be expected to have a material adverse effect on or affecting the assets, business, operations, earnings, properties, condition (financial or otherwise), prospects, stockholders' equity or results of operations of the Company and its subsidiaries, taken as a whole, or prevent or materially interfere with the consummation of the transactions contemplated hereby (a "*Material Adverse Effect*"). The Company does not own or control, directly or indirectly, any entity other than the subsidiaries listed in Exhibit 21.1 to the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2019, except for subsidiaries that in the aggregate would not constitute a "significant subsidiary" (as defined in Rule 405 under the Securities Act).

(x) *Capitalization.* The Company has an authorized and outstanding capitalization as set forth in each of the Registration Statement and the Prospectus (other than for subsequent issuances, if any, pursuant to employee benefit plans, under the exercise of outstanding options or as otherwise described in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus). All of the issued and outstanding shares of Common Stock have been duly authorized and validly issued, are fully paid and non-assessable, conform in all material respects to the description thereof contained in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus and were not issued in violation of any preemptive right, resale right, right of first refusal or similar right. All of the Company's options, warrants and other rights to purchase or exchange any securities for shares of the Company's capital stock have been duly authorized and validly issued, and conform in all material respects to the description thereof contained in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus. All of the issued shares of capital stock or other ownership interests of each subsidiary of the Company have been duly authorized and validly issued, are fully paid and non-assessable and are owned

directly or indirectly by the Company, free and clear of all liens, encumbrances, equities or claims, except for such liens, encumbrances, equities or claims as would not, individually or in the aggregate, reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(xi) *Due Authorization, Valid Issuance and Non-Assessibility of Shares.* The Shares have been duly authorized and, upon payment and delivery in accordance with the terms hereof, will be validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable, will conform in all material respects to the description thereof contained in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, will be issued in compliance with federal and state securities laws and will be free of preemptive rights, resale rights, rights of first refusal and similar rights.

(xii) *Authority to Enter into this Agreement.* The Company has all requisite corporate power and authority to execute, deliver and perform its obligations hereunder. This Agreement has been duly and validly authorized, executed and delivered by the Company.

(xiii) *Non-Contravention.* The issue and sale of the Shares, the execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement by the Company, the consummation of the transactions contemplated hereby and the application of the proceeds from the sale of the Shares as described under the caption "Use of Proceeds" in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus will not (i) conflict with or result in a breach or violation of any of the terms or provisions of, impose any lien, charge or encumbrance upon any property or assets of the Company and its subsidiaries, or constitute a default under, any indenture, mortgage, deed of trust, loan agreement, license, lease or other agreement or instrument to which the Company or any of its subsidiaries is a party or by which the Company or any of its subsidiaries is bound or to which any of the property or assets of the Company or any of its subsidiaries is subject, (ii) result in any violation of the provisions of the certificate of incorporation, charter or by-laws (or similar organizational documents) of the Company or any of its subsidiaries or (iii) result in any violation of any statute or any judgment, order, decree, rule or regulation of any court or governmental agency or body having jurisdiction over the Company or any of its subsidiaries or any of their properties or assets, except, with respect to clauses (i) and (iii), for such conflicts, breaches, violations, liens, charges, encumbrances or defaults that would not, individually or in the aggregate, reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(xiv) *No Consent or Approval Required.* No consent, approval, authorization or order of, or filing, registration or qualification with, any court or governmental agency or body having jurisdiction over the Company or any of its subsidiaries or any of their respective properties or assets is required for the issue and sale of the Shares, the execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement by the Company, the consummation of the transactions contemplated hereby or the application of the proceeds from the sale of the Shares as described under the caption "Use of Proceeds" in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, except for (i) the registration of the Shares under the Securities Act, (ii) such consents, approvals, authorizations, orders, filings, registrations or qualifications as may be required under the Exchange Act, applicable state or foreign securities laws, and/or the bylaws and rules of the Financial Industry Regulatory

Authority (“*FINRA*”) in connection with the sale of the Shares by the Agent and (iii) the inclusion of the Shares on the NASDAQ Capital Market (the “*Exchange*”).

(xv) *Internal Accounting Controls.* The Company and each of its subsidiaries maintain internal accounting controls designed to provide reasonable assurances regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with GAAP, including, but not limited to, internal accounting controls sufficient to provide reasonable assurance that (i) transactions are executed in accordance with management’s general or specific authorization, (ii) transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of the Company’s financial statements in conformity with GAAP and to maintain accountability for its assets, (iii) access to the Company’s assets is permitted only in accordance with management’s general or specific authorization, (iv) the recorded accountability for the Company’s assets is compared with existing assets at reasonable intervals and appropriate action is taken with respect to any differences and (v) the interactive data in XBRL included or incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus fairly present the information called for in all material respects and are prepared in accordance with the rules and guidelines of the Commission applicable thereto (it being understood that this subsection shall not require the Company to comply with Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, as amended, and the rules and regulations promulgated in connection therewith (collectively, the “*Sarbanes-Oxley Act*”) as of an earlier date than it would otherwise be required to so comply under applicable law). Except as disclosed in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus, as of the date of the most recent balance sheet of the Company and its consolidated subsidiaries audited by Ernst & Young LLP or Moss Adams LLP, as applicable, there were no material weaknesses in the Company’s internal controls.

(xvi) *Disclosure Controls.* The Company and each of its subsidiaries maintain “disclosure controls and procedures” (as defined in Rule 13a-15(e) under the Exchange Act) designed to ensure that the information required to be disclosed by the Company and its subsidiaries in the reports they file or submit under the Exchange Act is accumulated and communicated to management of the Company and its subsidiaries, including their respective principal executive officers and principal financial officers, as appropriate, to allow timely decisions regarding required disclosure to be made, and such disclosure controls and procedures are effective in all material respects to perform the functions for which they were established.

(xvii) *Critical Accounting Policies.* The section entitled “Critical Accounting Policies and Significant Judgements and Estimates” incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus accurately describes in all material respects (i) the accounting policies that the Company believes are the most important in the portrayal of the Company’s financial condition and results of operations and that require management’s most difficult, subjective or complex judgments, (ii) the judgments and uncertainties affecting the application of such accounting policies and (iii) the likelihood that materially different amounts would be reported under different conditions or using different assumptions, and an explanation thereof.

(xviii) *Sarbanes-Oxley Compliance.* There is and has been no failure on the part of the Company or, to the knowledge of the Company, any of the Company's directors or officers, in their capacities as such, to comply with any provision of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act that are applicable to the Company or its directors or officers in their capacities as such.

(xix) *Exceptions.* Except as would not, in the aggregate, reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect, since the date of the latest audited financial statements included in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus and, except as disclosed in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries has (i) sustained any loss or interference with its business from fire, explosion, flood or other calamity, whether or not covered by insurance, or from any labor dispute or court or governmental action, order or decree, (ii) issued or granted any securities (other than pursuant to employee benefit plans, qualified stock option plans or other equity compensation plans or arrangements existing on the date hereof and disclosed in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus), (iii) incurred any material liability or obligation, direct or contingent, other than liabilities and obligations that were incurred in the ordinary course of business, (iv) entered into any material transaction not in the ordinary course of business or (v) declared or paid any dividend on its share capital; and since such date, except as disclosed in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, there has not been any change in the share capital, long-term debt, net current assets or short-term debt of the Company or any of its subsidiaries or any adverse change, or any development involving a prospective adverse change, in or affecting the condition (financial or otherwise), results of operations, shareholders' equity, properties, management, business or prospects of the Company and its subsidiaries, taken as a whole.

(xx) *Valid Title.* The Company and each of its subsidiaries have good and marketable title in fee simple to all real property and good and marketable title to all personal property owned by them that are material to the business of the Company, in each case free and clear of all liens, encumbrances and defects, except for such liens, encumbrances and defects as do not materially affect the value of such property and do not materially interfere with the use made and proposed to be made of such property by the Company and its subsidiaries. All assets held under lease by the Company and its subsidiaries that are material to the business of the Company are held under valid, subsisting and enforceable leases, with such exceptions as do not materially interfere with the use made and proposed to be made of such assets by the Company and its subsidiaries.

(xxi) *Absence of Enforcement Actions.* The Company and, to the knowledge of the Company, its directors, officers, employees and agents (while acting in such capacity) are and, at all times prior to the date hereof, have been in compliance with all health care laws and regulations applicable to the Company or any of its product candidates or activities, including development and testing of pharmaceutical products, kickbacks, recordkeeping, documentation requirements, the hiring of employees (to the extent governed by Health Care Laws), quality, safety, privacy, security, licensure, accreditation or any other aspect of developing and testing health care or pharmaceutical products (collectively, "**Health Care Laws**"), except where such noncompliance would

not, individually or in the aggregate, have Material Adverse Effect. The Company has not received any notification, correspondence or any other written or oral communication, including notification of any pending or threatened claim, suit, proceeding, hearing, enforcement, investigation, arbitration or other action from any governmental authority, including, without limitation, the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (the “**FDA**”), the U.S. Drug Enforcement Administration, the Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services and the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services Office of Inspector General, of potential or actual non-compliance by, or liability of, the Company under any Health Care Laws. To the knowledge of the Company, there are no facts or circumstances that would reasonably be expected to give rise to liability of the Company under any Health Care Laws, except as would not individually or in the aggregate have a Material Adverse Effect. Neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries has engaged in activities that are, as applicable, cause for false claims liability, civil penalties, or mandatory or permissive exclusion from Medicare, Medicaid or any other state or federal health care program. Except as described in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, as applicable, (i) there have been no recalls, field notifications, field corrections, market withdrawals or replacements, safety alerts or other notices of action relating to an alleged lack of safety, efficacy, or regulatory compliance of the Company’s products (“**Safety Notices**”), (ii) any Safety Notices have been resolved or closed and (iii) to the knowledge of the Company, there are no material complaints with respect to the Company products that are currently unresolved.

(xxii) *Intellectual Property.* To the knowledge of the Company, the Company and its subsidiaries own or possess the valid right to use all (i) patents, patent applications, trademarks, trademark registrations, service marks, service mark registrations, internet domain name registrations, copyrights, copyright registrations, licenses and trade secret rights (collectively, “**Intellectual Property Rights**”) and (ii) inventions, software, works of authorships, trademarks, service marks, trade names, databases, formulae, know how, Internet domain names and other intellectual property (including trade secrets and other unpatented and/or unpatentable proprietary confidential information, systems, or procedures) (collectively, “**Intellectual Property Assets**”) necessary to conduct their respective businesses as currently conducted and as proposed to be conducted and described in the Prospectus. The Company and its subsidiaries have not received written notice of any challenge, which is still pending, by any other person to the rights of the Company and its subsidiaries with respect to any Intellectual Property Rights or Intellectual Property Assets owned or used by the Company or its subsidiaries, except as would not, singly or in the aggregate, reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect. To the knowledge of the Company, the Company and its subsidiaries’ respective businesses as now conducted do not give rise to any material infringement, material misappropriation or other material violation of any valid and enforceable Intellectual Property Rights of any other person. All licenses for the use of the Intellectual Property Rights described in the Prospectus are valid, binding upon and enforceable by or against the parties thereto in accordance with their terms. The Company has complied in all material respects with, and is not in breach and has not received any asserted or threatened claim of material breach under, all material licenses related to Intellectual Property Rights, and the Company has no knowledge of any material breach by any other person to any such

licenses to which the Company is a party. No claim has been made, and is currently pending, against the Company alleging the infringement by the Company of any patent, trademark, service mark, trade name, copyright, trade secret, license in or other intellectual property right or franchise right of any person, except as would not, singly or in the aggregate, reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect. The Company has taken all reasonable steps to protect, maintain and safeguard its Intellectual Property Rights, including the execution of appropriate nondisclosure and confidentiality agreements. The consummation of the transactions contemplated hereby will not result in the loss or impairment of or payment of any additional amounts with respect to, nor require the consent of any other person in respect of, the Company's right to own, use, or hold for use any of the Intellectual Property Rights as owned, used or held for use in the conduct of the business as currently conducted.

(xxiii) *Permits.* The Company and its subsidiaries possess all material certificates, authorizations, clearances, approvals, registrations, exemptions, licenses or permits required by state, federal or foreign regulatory agencies or bodies to conduct their respective businesses as currently conducted and as described the Prospectus ("*Permits*"), and all such Permits are valid, current and in full force and effect, except where the failure to so possess or be valid, current and in full force and effect would not, singly or in the aggregate, reasonably be expected to result in a Material Adverse Effect. Neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries is in violation of, or in default under, any of the Permits or has received any notice of proceedings relating to the revocation or modification of, or non-compliance with, any such certificate, authorization or permit. Neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries has received any notice of proceedings relating to the revocation or modification of any Permits which, singly or in the aggregate, if the subject of an unfavorable decision, ruling or finding, would reasonably be expected to result in a Material Adverse Effect. The Company has not received any written notice denying, revoking or modifying any "approved enterprise," "benefited enterprise" or "preferred enterprise" status with respect to any of the Company's facilities or operations.

(xxiv) *Compliance with Applicable Laws and Regulations.* Except as described in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, as applicable, the Company and its subsidiaries: (i) are and at all times have been in compliance with all statutes, rules and regulations applicable to the ownership, testing, development, manufacture, packaging, processing, use, distribution, marketing, advertising, labeling, promotion, sale, offer for sale, storage, import, export or disposal of any product manufactured or distributed by the Company, including, without limitation, the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act (21 U.S.C. §301 et seq.), the Public Health Service Act (42 U.S.C. § 201 et seq.), the federal Anti-Kickback Statute (42 U.S.C. §1320a-7b(b)), the civil False Claims Act (31 U.S.C. §§ 3729 et seq.), the administrative False Claims Law (42 U.S.C. § 1320a-7b(a)), the federal Physician Payment Sunshine Act (42 U.S.C. Section 1320a-7h), the Civil Monetary Penalties Law (42 U.S.C. § 1320a-7a), the exclusion laws (42 U.S.C. § 1320a-7), all criminal laws relating to health care fraud and abuse, including, but not limited to, 18 U.S.C. §§ 286 and 287, the criminal health care fraud provisions of the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996 (18 U.S.C. §§ 1035 and 1347) ("HIPAA"), Medicare (Title XVIII of the Social Security Act), Medicaid (Title XIX of

the Social Security Act), HIPAA as amended by the Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health Act of 2009, and the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act of 2010, as amended by the Health Care and Education Affordability Reconciliation Act of 2010, the regulations promulgated pursuant to such laws, any successor government programs and comparable state laws, regulations relating to Good Clinical Practices and Good Laboratory Practices, collection and reporting requirements and the processing of any applicable rebate, chargeback or adjustment, under applicable rules and regulations relating to the Medicaid Drug Rebate Program (42 U.S.C. § 1396r-8), any state supplemental rebate program, Medicare average sales price reporting (42 U.S.C. § 1395w-3a), the Public Health Service Act (42 U.S.C. § 256b), the VA Federal Supply Schedule (38 U.S.C. § 8126) or under any state pharmaceutical assistance program or U.S. Department of Veterans Affairs agreement, and any successor government programs, and all other local, state, federal, national, supranational and foreign laws, manual provisions, policies and administrative guidance relating to the regulation of the Company (collectively, the “**Applicable Laws**”); (ii) have not received any notice from any court or arbitrator or governmental or regulatory authority or third party alleging or asserting noncompliance with any Applicable Laws or any Permits and supplements or amendments thereto (“**Authorizations**”); (iii) possess all Authorizations, and such Authorizations are valid and in full force and effect and are not in violation of any term of any such Authorizations; (iv) have not received written notice of any claim, action, suit, proceeding, hearing, enforcement, investigation arbitration or other action from any court or arbitrator or governmental or regulatory authority or third party alleging that any product operation or activity is in violation of any Applicable Laws or Authorizations, nor is any such claim, action, suit, proceeding, hearing, enforcement, investigation, arbitration or other action threatened; (v) have not received any written, or to the knowledge of the Company, oral, notice that any court or arbitrator or governmental or regulatory authority has taken, is taking or intends to take any action to limit, suspend, materially modify or revoke any Authorizations, nor is any such limitation, suspension, modification or revocation threatened; and (vi) have filed, obtained, maintained or submitted all material reports, documents, forms, notices, applications, records, claims, submissions and supplements or amendments as required by any Applicable Laws or Authorizations and that all such reports, documents, forms, notices, applications, records, claims, submissions and supplements or amendments were complete and accurate on the date filed (or were corrected or supplemented by a subsequent submission). Neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries is a party to or has any ongoing reporting obligation pursuant to any corporate integrity agreement, deferred prosecution agreement, monitoring agreement, consent decree, settlement order, plan of correction or similar agreement with or imposed by any governmental or regulatory authority. Neither the Company, any of its subsidiaries nor any of its or their respective officers, directors, employees or, to the knowledge of the Company, agents, has been excluded, suspended or debarred from or otherwise ineligible for participation in any U.S. federal health care program or human clinical research or, to the knowledge of the Company, is subject to a governmental inquiry, investigation, proceeding or other similar action that could reasonably be expected to result in debarment, suspension, ineligibility or exclusion.

(xxv) *Clinical Trials.* The clinical and pre-clinical trials conducted by or on behalf of or sponsored by the Company, or in which the Company has participated, that are described in the Prospectus or the results of which are referred to in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, as applicable, were and, if still pending, are being conducted in accordance with standard medical and scientific research procedures and all applicable statutes, rules and regulations of the FDA and comparable drug regulatory agencies outside of the United States to which they are subject (collectively, the “**Regulatory Authorities**”), including, without limitation, 21 C.F.R. Parts 50, 54, 56, 58 and 312, and current Good Clinical Practices and Good Laboratory Practices; the descriptions in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus of the results of such studies and trials are accurate and complete and fairly present the data derived from such trials; the Company has no knowledge of any other trials the results of which are inconsistent with or otherwise call into question the results described or referred to in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus; the Company and its subsidiaries have each operated and are currently in compliance with all applicable statutes, rules and regulations of the Regulatory Authorities; and neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries has received any written notice, correspondence or other communication from the Regulatory Authorities or any governmental authority which could lead to the termination or suspension of any clinical or pre-clinical trials that are described in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus or the results of which are referred to in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, and there are no reasonable grounds for same.

(xxvi) *Absence of Settlement Agreements or Undertakings.* Except as disclosed in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, the Company is not a party to any corporate integrity agreements, monitoring agreements, consent decrees, settlement orders, or similar agreements with or imposed by any governmental authority.

(xxvii) *Absence of Legal or Governmental Proceedings.* Except as disclosed in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, there are no legal or governmental proceedings pending to which the Company or any of its subsidiaries is a party or of which any property or assets of the Company or any of its subsidiaries is the subject that, if determined adversely to the Company, would, in the aggregate, reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect or would, in the aggregate, reasonably be expected to have a material adverse effect on the performance of this Agreement or the consummation of the transactions contemplated hereby; and to the knowledge of the Company, no such proceedings are threatened or contemplated by governmental authorities or others.

(xxviii) *Material Contracts.* There are no contracts or other documents required to be described in the Registration Statement or filed as exhibits to the Registration Statement that are not described and/or filed as required. The statements made in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, insofar as they purport to constitute summaries of the terms of the contracts and other documents described and/or filed, constitute accurate summaries of the terms of such contracts and documents in all material respects. Except as disclosed in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries has knowledge that any other party to any such contract or other document has any intention not to render full performance as contemplated by the terms thereof.

(xxix) *Insurance.* Except as would not reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect, the Company and each of its subsidiaries maintain insurance from nationally recognized, in the applicable country, insurers in such amounts and covering such risks as is commercially reasonable in accordance with customary practices for companies engaged in similar businesses and similar industries for the conduct of their respective businesses and the value of their respective properties and as is customary for companies engaged in similar businesses in similar industries. All insurance policies of the Company and its subsidiaries are in full force and effect; the Company and each of its subsidiaries are in compliance with the terms of such policies in all material respects; neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries has received notice from any insurer or agent thereof that capital improvements or other expenditures are required or necessary to be made in order to continue such insurance; there are no material claims by the Company or any of its subsidiaries under any such policy as to which any insurance company is denying liability or defending under a reservation of rights clause; and neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries has any reason to believe that it will not be able to renew its existing insurance coverage as and when such coverage expires, or to obtain similar coverage from similar insurers as may be necessary to continue its business at a cost that would not reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(xxx) *Related Party Disclosure.* No relationship, direct or indirect, exists between or among the Company, on the one hand, and the directors, officers, shareholders, customers or suppliers of the Company, on the other hand, that is required to be described in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus that is not so described.

(xxxii) *No Labor Dispute.* No labor disturbance by or dispute with the employees of the Company or any of its subsidiaries exists or, to the knowledge of the Company, is imminent that could reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(xxxiii) *No Default.* Except as disclosed in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries (i) is in violation of its certificate of incorporation, charter or by-laws (or similar organizational documents), (ii) is in default, and no event has occurred that, with notice or lapse of time or both, would constitute such a default, in the due performance or observance of any term, covenant, condition or other obligation contained in any indenture, mortgage, deed of trust, loan agreement, license or other agreement or instrument to which it is a party, by which it is bound or to which any of its properties or assets is subject (iii) is in violation of any statute or any order, rule or regulation of any court or governmental agency or body having jurisdiction over it or its property or assets or (iv) has failed to obtain any license, permit, certificate, franchise or other governmental authorization or permit necessary to the ownership of its property or to the conduct of its business, except in the case of clauses (ii) and (iii), to the extent any such conflict, breach, violation or default would not, individually or in the aggregate, reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(xxxiii) *Environmental Laws.* Except as disclosed in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, the Company and each of its subsidiaries (i) are, and at all times since December 1, 2017 were, in compliance with all laws, regulations, ordinances, rules, orders, judgments, decrees, permits or other legal requirements of any governmental authority, including without limitation any international, foreign, national, state, provincial, regional, or local authority, relating to pollution, the protection of human health or safety, the environment, or natural resources, or to use, handling, storage, manufacturing, transportation, treatment, discharge, disposal or release of hazardous or toxic substances or wastes, pollutants or contaminants (collectively, “*Environmental Laws*”) applicable to such entity, which compliance includes, without limitation, obtaining, maintaining and complying with all permits and authorizations and approvals required by Environmental Laws to conduct their respective businesses, and (ii) have not received written notice or otherwise have knowledge of any actual or alleged violation of Environmental Laws, or of any actual or potential liability for or other obligation concerning the presence, disposal or release of hazardous or toxic substances or wastes, pollutants or contaminants, except in the case of clause (i) or (ii) where such non-compliance, violation, liability or other obligation would not, in the aggregate, reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect. Except as described in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, (x) there are no proceedings that are pending, or to the knowledge of the Company, threatened, against the Company or any of its subsidiaries under Environmental Laws in which a governmental authority is also a party, other than such proceedings regarding which it is reasonably believed no monetary sanctions of \$100,000 or more will be imposed, (y) the Company and its subsidiaries are not aware of any issues regarding compliance with Environmental Laws, including any pending or proposed Environmental Laws, or liabilities or other obligations under Environmental Laws or concerning hazardous or toxic substances or wastes, pollutants or contaminants, that could reasonably be expected to have a material effect on the capital expenditures, earnings or competitive position of the Company and its subsidiaries and (z) none of the Company and its subsidiaries anticipates material capital expenditures relating to Environmental Laws.

(xxxiv) *Taxes.* The Company and each of its subsidiaries have filed all federal, state, local and foreign tax returns required to be filed through the date hereof, subject to permitted extensions, and have paid all taxes due, and no tax deficiency has been determined adversely to the Company or any of its subsidiaries, nor does the Company have any knowledge of any tax deficiencies that have been, or would reasonably be expected to be asserted against the Company, that would, in the aggregate, reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(xxxv) *ERISA Compliance.* (i) Each “employee benefit plan” (within the meaning of Section 3(3) of the Employee Retirement Security Act of 1974, as amended (“*ERISA*”)) for which the Company or any member of its “Controlled Group” (within the meaning of Section 414 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder (the “*Code*”)) would have any liability (each, a “*Plan*”) has been maintained in compliance in all material respects with its terms and with the requirements of all applicable statutes, rules and regulations, including, without

limitation, ERISA and the Code; (ii) no “prohibited transaction” (within the meaning of Section 406 of ERISA or Section 4975 of the Code) has occurred with respect to any Plan excluding transactions effected pursuant to a statutory or administrative exemption; (iii) with respect to each Plan subject to Title IV of ERISA (A) no “reportable event” (within the meaning of Section 4043(c) of ERISA) has occurred or is reasonably expected to occur that would result in a material loss to the Company, (B) no “accumulated funding deficiency” (within the meaning of Section 302 of ERISA or Section 412 of the Code), whether or not waived, has occurred or is reasonably expected to occur, (C) the fair market value of the assets under each Plan that is required to be funded exceeds the present value of all benefits accrued under such Plan (determined based on those assumptions used to fund such Plan) and (D) neither the Company or any member of its Controlled Group has incurred, or reasonably expects to incur, any liability under Title IV of ERISA (other than contributions to the Plan or premiums to the Pension Benefit Guaranty Corporation in the ordinary course and without default) in respect of a Plan, including a “multiemployer plan” (within the meaning of Section 4001(c)(3) of ERISA); and (iv) each Plan that is intended to be qualified under Section 401(a) of the Code is so qualified, and nothing has occurred, to the knowledge of the Company, whether by action or by failure to act, which would cause the loss of such qualification.

(xxxvi) *Accuracy of Statistical and Market Data.* The statistical and market-related data included in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus and the consolidated financial statements of the Company and its subsidiaries included or incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus are based on or derived from sources that the Company believes to be reliable in all material respects.

(xxxvii) *Not an Investment Company.* Neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries is and, as of the applicable Settlement Date and after giving effect to the offer and sale of the Shares and the application of the proceeds therefrom as described under the caption “Use of Proceeds” in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, none of them will be, (i) an “investment company” or a company “controlled” by an “investment company” (within the meaning of the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended (the “*Investment Company Act*”), and the rules and regulations of the Commission thereunder) or (ii) a “business development company” (as defined in Section 2(a)(48) of the Investment Company Act).

(xxxviii) *Accuracy of Certain Summaries and Statements.* The statements set forth or incorporated by reference, as applicable, in each of the Registration Statement and the Prospectus under the captions “Description of Capital Stock,” and in the Company’s Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2019 under the captions “Legal Proceedings” and “Certain Relationships and Related Transactions, and Director Independence,” insofar as they purport to summarize the provisions of the laws and documents referred to therein, are accurate summaries in all material respects.

(xxxix) *Registration Rights.* Except as disclosed in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, there are no contracts, agreements or understandings between the Company and any person granting such person the right to require the

Company to file a registration statement under the Securities Act with respect to any securities of the Company owned or to be owned by such person. There are no contracts, agreements or understandings to require the Company to include any such securities in the Shares proposed to be offered pursuant to this Agreement, except for such contracts, agreements or understandings that have been validly waived in writing prior to the date hereof.

(xl) *No Other Brokers.* Neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries is a party to any contract, agreement or understanding with any person (other than this Agreement) that would give rise to a valid claim against any of them or the Agent for a brokerage commission, finder's fee or like payment in connection with the offering and sale of the Shares.

(xli) *No Integration.* The Company has not sold or issued any securities that would be integrated with the offering of the Shares pursuant to the Securities Act or the interpretations thereof by the Commission.

(xlii) *Absence of Stabilization or Manipulation.* The Company and its affiliates have not taken, directly or indirectly, any action designed to or that has constituted or that could reasonably be expected to cause or result in the stabilization or manipulation of the price of any security of the Company in connection with the offering of the Shares.

(xliii) *Exchange Act Registration and Listing of the Common Stock.* The shares of Common Stock are registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Exchange Act and listed on the Exchange; the Company has taken no action designed to, or reasonably likely to have the effect of, terminating the registration of the Common Stock under the Exchange Act or delisting the Common Stock from the Exchange, nor has the Company received any notification that the Commission or FINRA is contemplating terminating such registration or listing.

(xliv) *Offering Material.* The Company has not distributed and, prior to any Settlement Date, will not distribute any offering material in connection with any Placement (as defined in Section 2(a)(i) hereof), other than the Prospectus and any Permitted Free Writing Prospectus to which the Agent has consented.

(xlv) *Compliance with Labor Laws.* Neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries is in violation of or has received written notice of any violation with respect to any federal or state law relating to discrimination in the hiring, promotion or pay of employees, nor any applicable federal or state wage and hour laws, nor any state law precluding the denial of credit due to the neighborhood in which a property is situated, the violation of any of which could reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(xlvi) *No Unlawful Payments.* Neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries nor, to the knowledge of the Company, any director, officer, agent, employee or other person associated with or acting on behalf of the Company or any of its subsidiaries, has (i) used any corporate funds for any unlawful contribution, gift,

entertainment or other unlawful expense relating to political activity, (ii) made any direct or indirect unlawful payment to any foreign or domestic government official or employee from corporate funds, (iii) violated or is in violation of any provision of the U.S. Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977, the Organization for Economic Co-operation and Development Convention on Bribery of Foreign Public Officials in International Business Transactions, and the rules and regulations thereunder, and any other similar foreign or domestic law or regulation or (iv) made any bribe, rebate, payoff, influence payment, kickback or other unlawful payment. The Company has instituted and maintains policies and procedures designed to ensure continued compliance with the laws and regulations referenced in clause (iii) of this paragraph.

(xlvii) *Anti-Bribery and Anti-Money Laundering Laws.* Each of the Company, its subsidiaries and its controlled affiliates and any of their respective officers and directors, and to the knowledge of the Company, their supervisors, managers, agents, or employees, has not violated, the delivery of a Placement Notice (as defined in Section 2(a)(i) hereof) will not violate, and the Company and each of its subsidiaries has instituted and maintains policies and procedures designed to ensure continued compliance with, each of the following laws: anti-bribery laws, including but not limited to, any applicable law, rule, or regulation of any locality, including but not limited to any law, rule, or regulation promulgated to implement the OECD Convention on Combating Bribery of Foreign Public Officials in International Business Transactions, signed December 17, 1997, including the U.S. Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977, as amended, the U.K. Bribery Act 2010, or any other law, rule or regulation of similar purposes and scope, or anti-money laundering laws, including but not limited to, applicable federal, state, international, foreign or other laws, regulations or government guidance regarding anti-money laundering, including, without limitation, Title 18 US. Code section 1956 and 1957, the Patriot Act, the Bank Secrecy Act, and international anti-money laundering principles or procedures by an intergovernmental group or organization (collectively, “*Anti-Money Laundering Laws*”), such as the Financial Action Task Force on Money Laundering, of which the United States is a member and with which designation the United States representative to the group or organization continues to concur, all as amended, and any Executive order, directive, or regulation pursuant to the authority of any of the foregoing, or any orders or licenses issued thereunder. No action, suit or proceeding by or before any court or governmental agency, authority, or before any body or arbitrator, involving the Company or any of its subsidiaries with respect to Anti-Money Laundering Laws is pending or to the knowledge of the Company, threatened.

(xlviii) *OFAC.*

(A) Neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries, nor any of their directors or officers, nor, to the Company’s knowledge, any employee, agent, affiliate or representative of the Company or its subsidiaries, is an individual or entity that is, or is owned or controlled by an individual or entity that is:

(1) the subject of any sanctions administered or enforced by the U.S. Department of Treasury’s Office of Foreign Assets Control, the United

Nations Security Council, the European Union, Her Majesty's Treasury, or other relevant sanctions authority (collectively, "**Sanctions**"), nor

(2) located, organized or resident in a country or territory that is the subject of Sanctions (including, without limitation, Burma/Myanmar, Crimea, Cuba, Iran, Libya, North Korea, Sudan and Syria).

(B) Neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries will, directly or indirectly, use the proceeds of the offering, or lend, contribute or otherwise make available such proceeds to any subsidiary, joint venture partner or other individual or entity:

(1) to fund or facilitate any activities or business of or with any individual or entity or in any country or territory that, at the time of such funding or facilitation, is the subject of Sanctions; or

(2) in any other manner that will result in a violation of Sanctions by any individual or entity (including any individual or entity participating in the offering, whether as underwriter, advisor, investor or otherwise).

(C) Since August 1, 2016, neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries has knowingly engaged in, and is not now knowingly engaged in, any dealings or transactions with any individual or entity, or in any country or territory, that at the time of the dealing or transaction is or was the subject of Sanctions.

(xlix) *Not a Passive Foreign Investment Company.* Subject to the qualifications and assumptions set forth in the Registration Statement, the Company is not, and upon the sale of the Shares contemplated by this Agreement does not expect to become, a "passive foreign investment company" (as defined in Section 1297 of the Code).

(l) *No Taxes or Fees Due Upon Issuance.* No stamp, issue, registration, documentary, transfer or other similar taxes and duties, including interest and penalties, are payable on or in connection with the issuance and sale of the Shares by the Company or the execution and delivery of this Agreement.

(li) *No Immunity.* Neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries, nor any of their respective properties or assets, has any immunity from the jurisdiction of any court or from any legal process (whether through service or notice, attachment to prior judgment, attachment in aid of execution or otherwise) under the laws of any jurisdiction in which it is organized, headquartered or doing business.

(lii) *No Legal, Accounting or Tax Advice.* The Company has not relied upon the Agent or legal counsel for the Agent for any legal, tax or accounting advice in connection with the offering and sale of the Shares.

(liii) *Certificate as Representation and Warranty.* Any certificate signed by any officer of the Company and delivered to the Agent or the Agent’s counsel in connection with the offering of the Shares shall be deemed a representation and warranty by the Company to the Agent as to the matters covered thereby.

(liv) *Cybersecurity.* The Company and its subsidiaries’ information technology assets and equipment, computers, systems, networks, hardware, software, websites, applications, and databases (collectively, “*IT Systems*”) are adequate for, and operate and perform in all material respects as required in connection with the operation of the business of the Company and its subsidiaries as currently conducted, free and clear of all material bugs, errors, defects, Trojan horses, time bombs, malware and other corruptants. The Company and its subsidiaries have implemented and maintained commercially reasonable physical, technical and administrative controls, policies, procedures, and safeguards to maintain and protect their material confidential information and the integrity, continuous operation, redundancy and security of all IT Systems and data, including “*Personal Data*,” used in connection with their businesses. “*Personal Data*” means (i) a natural person’s name, street address, telephone number, e-mail address, photograph, social security number or tax identification number, driver’s license number, passport number, credit card number, bank information, or customer or account number; (ii) any information which would qualify as “personally identifying information” under the Federal Trade Commission Act, as amended; (iii) “personal data” as defined by GDPR (as defined below); (iv) any information which would qualify as “protected health information” under the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996, as amended by the Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health Act; and (v) any other piece of information that allows the identification of such natural person, or his or her family, or permits the collection or analysis of any data related to an identified person’s health or sexual orientation. There have been no material breaches, violations, outages or unauthorized uses of or accesses to same, nor any incidents under internal review or investigations relating to the same. The Company and its subsidiaries are presently in material compliance with all applicable laws or statutes and all judgments, orders, rules and regulations of any court or arbitrator or governmental or regulatory authority, internal policies and contractual obligations relating to the privacy and security of IT Systems and Personal Data and to the protection of such IT Systems and Personal Data from unauthorized use, access, misappropriation or modification.

2. *Purchase, Sale and Delivery of Shares.*

(a) *At-the-Market Sales.* On the basis of the representations, warranties and agreements herein contained, but subject to the terms and conditions herein set forth, the Company agrees to issue and sell through the Agent as sales agent, and the Agent agrees to use its commercially reasonable efforts to sell for and on behalf of the Company, the Shares on the following terms and conditions; *provided, however*, that any obligation of the Agent to use such commercially reasonable efforts shall be subject to the continuing accuracy of the representations and warranties of the Company herein, the performance by the Company of its covenants and obligations hereunder and

the continuing satisfaction of the conditions specified in Section 4 hereof. The Company acknowledges and agrees that (i) there can be no assurance that the Agent will be successful in selling Shares and (ii) the Agent will incur no liability or obligation to the Company or any other person or entity if it does not sell Shares for any reason other than a failure by the Agent to use its commercially reasonable efforts consistent with its normal trading and sales practices to sell such Shares as required under this Section 2.

(i) Each time that the Company wishes to issue and sell the Shares hereunder (each, a **“Placement”**), it will notify the Agent by email notice (or other method mutually agreed to in writing by the parties) (a **“Placement Notice”**) containing the parameters in accordance with which it desires the Shares to be sold, which shall at a minimum include the number of shares of Shares to be issued, the time period during which sales are requested to be made, any limitation on the number of Shares that may be sold in any one Trading Day (as defined below) and any minimum price below which sales may not be made, a form of which containing such minimum sales parameters is attached hereto as Schedule 1. The Placement Notice shall originate from any of the individuals from the Company set forth on Schedule 2 hereto (with a copy to each of the other individuals from the Company listed on such schedule), and shall be addressed to each of the individuals from the Agent set forth on Schedule 2 hereto, as such schedule may be amended from time to time. The Placement Notice shall be effective upon receipt by the Agent unless and until (i) in accordance with the notice requirements set forth in Section 2(a)(iii) hereof, the Agent declines to accept the terms contained therein for any reason, in its sole discretion, (ii) the entire amount of the Shares have been sold, (iii) the Company suspends or terminates the Placement Notice in accordance with the notice requirements set forth in Section 2(a)(iii) hereof, (iv) the Company issues a subsequent Placement Notice with parameters superseding those on the earlier dated Placement Notice or (v) this Agreement has been terminated under the provisions of Section 7 hereof. The amount of any Sales Commission (as defined below) or other compensation to be paid by the Company to the Agent in connection with the sale of the Shares shall be calculated in accordance with the terms set forth in Section 2(a)(v) hereof. It is expressly acknowledged and agreed that neither the Company nor the Agent will have any obligation whatsoever with respect to a Placement or any Shares unless and until the Company delivers a Placement Notice to the Agent and the Agent does not decline such Placement Notice pursuant to the terms set forth above, and then only upon the terms specified therein and herein. In the event of a conflict between the terms of this Agreement and the terms of the Placement Notice, the terms of the Placement Notice will control. For the purposes hereof, **“Trading Day”** means any day on which the Common Stock is purchased and sold on the Exchange, or such other principal market on which the Common Stock is subsequently listed or quoted.

(ii) The Shares are to be sold by the Agent on a daily basis or otherwise as shall be agreed to by the Company and the Agent on any Trading Day. The gross sales price of the Shares sold under this Section 2(a) shall be the market price for the Common Stock sold by the Agent under this Section 2(a) at the time of such sale.

(iii) Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Company may instruct the Agent by telephone (confirmed promptly by email) not to sell the Shares if such sales

cannot be effected at or above the price designated by the Company in any such instruction. Furthermore, the Company shall not authorize the issuance and sale of, and the Agent shall not be obligated to use its commercially reasonable efforts to sell, any Share at a price lower than the minimum price therefor designated from time to time by the Company's Board of Directors and notified to the Agent in writing. In addition, the Company or the Agent may, upon notice to the other party hereto by telephone (confirmed promptly by email), suspend the offering of the Shares, whereupon the Agent shall so suspend the offering of Shares until further notice is provided to the other party to the contrary; *provided, however*, that such suspension or termination shall not affect or impair the parties' respective obligations with respect to the Shares sold hereunder prior to the giving of such notice. Notwithstanding any other provision of this Agreement, during any period in which the Company is in possession of material non-public information, the Company and the Agent agree that (i) no sale of Shares will take place, (ii) the Company shall not request the sale of any Shares and (iii) the Agent shall not be obligated to sell or offer to sell any Shares.

(iv) Subject to the terms of the Placement Notice, the Agent may sell the Shares by any method permitted by law deemed to be an "at the market offering" (as defined in Rule 415(a)(4) under the Securities Act), including sales made directly on or through the Exchange. Subject to the terms of any Placement Notice, the Agent may also sell Shares in negotiated transactions at market prices prevailing at the time of sale or at prices related to such prevailing market prices and/or any other method permitted by law, subject to the prior written consent of the Company.

(v) The compensation to the Agent for the sale of the Shares, as an agent of the Company, shall be 3.0% of the gross sales price of the Shares sold pursuant to this Section 2(a), payable in cash (the "**Sales Commission**"); *provided that* the combined Sales Commission and reimbursement of the Agent for its out-of-pocket expenses pursuant to Section 3(g) hereof, including reasonable fees and disbursements of the Agent's counsel, shall not exceed 8.0% of the gross sales price of such Shares. The remaining proceeds, after further deduction for any transaction fees imposed by any governmental or self-regulatory organization in respect of such sales, and any reimbursement of expenses that the Agent may be entitled to pursuant to Section 3(g) hereof, shall constitute the net proceeds to the Company for such Shares (the "**Net Proceeds**").

(vi) The Agent will provide written confirmation to the Company (including by email correspondence to each of the individuals of the Company set forth on Schedule 2 hereto), no later than the opening of the Trading Day immediately following the Trading Day on which it has made sales of Shares hereunder, setting forth the number of Shares sold on such day, the volume-weighted average price of the Shares sold and the Net Proceeds payable to the Company.

(vii) All Shares sold pursuant to this Section 2(a) will be delivered by the Company to the Agent for the account of the Agent, against payment of the Net Proceeds therefor, by wire transfer of same-day funds payable to the order of the Company at the offices of Piper Sandler & Co., U.S. Bancorp Center, 800 Nicollet Mall, Minneapolis, Minnesota, or

such other location as may be mutually acceptable, at 9:00 a.m. Central Time on the second full business day following the date on which such Shares are sold, or at such other time and date as the Agent and the Company determine pursuant to Rule 15c6-1(a) under the Exchange Act, each such time and date of delivery being herein called a “**Settlement Date.**” If the Agent so elects, delivery of the Shares may be made by credit through full fast transfer to an account or accounts at The Depository Trust Company designated by the Agent. On each Settlement Date, the Agent will deliver the Net Proceeds in same day funds to an account designated by the Company on, or prior to, such Settlement Date. The Company agrees that if the Company, or its transfer agent (if applicable), defaults in its obligation to timely deliver duly authorized Shares on a Settlement Date, the Company agrees that in addition to and in no way limiting the rights and obligations set forth in Section 5 hereof, it will (i) hold the Agent harmless against any loss, claim, damage, or expense (including reasonable legal fees and expenses), as incurred, arising out of or in connection with such default by the Company and (ii) pay to the Agent any Sales Commission or other compensation to which the Agent would otherwise have been entitled absent such default.

(b) *Maximum Amount.* Under no circumstances shall the aggregate number or aggregate value of the Shares sold pursuant to this Agreement exceed: (i) the aggregate number and aggregate dollar amount of shares of Common Stock available for issuance under the currently effective Registration Statement, (ii) the aggregate number of authorized but unissued shares of Common Stock that are available for issuance under the Company’s certificate of incorporation or certificate of designation, as applicable, (iii) the aggregate dollar amount of shares of Common Stock permitted to be sold under the Company’s effective Registration Statement (including any limit set forth in General Instruction I.B.6 thereof, if applicable) or (iv) the aggregate number of aggregate dollar amount of shares of Common Stock for which the Company has filed any Prospectus or prospectus supplement in connection with the Shares (the lesser of (i), (ii), (iii) and (iv), the “**Maximum Amount**”).

(c) *No Association or Partnership.* Nothing herein contained shall constitute the Agent an unincorporated association or partner with the Company.

(d) *Duration.* Under no circumstances shall any Shares be sold pursuant to this Agreement after the date which is three years after the Registration Statement is first declared effective by the Commission.

(e) *Market Transactions by Agent.* The Company acknowledges and agrees that the Agent has informed the Company that the Agent may, to the extent permitted under the Securities Act, the Exchange Act and this Agreement, purchase and sell shares of Common Stock for its own account while this Agreement is in effect, *provided, that* (i) no sale for its own account shall take place while a Placement Notice is in effect (except to the extent the Agent may engage in sales of Shares purchased or deemed purchased from the Company as a “riskless principal” or in a similar capacity) and (ii) the Company shall not be deemed to have authorized or consented to any such purchases or sales by the Agent. The Company consents to the Agent trading in the Common Stock for the account of any of its clients at the same time as sales of the Shares occur pursuant to this Agreement.

3. **Covenants of the Company.** The Company covenants and agrees with the Agent as follows:

(a) *Amendments to Registration Statement and Prospectus.* After the date of hereof and during any period in which a Prospectus relating to any Shares is required to be delivered by the Agent under the Securities Act (including in circumstances where such requirement may be satisfied pursuant to Rule 172 under the Securities Act or any similar rule), the Company agrees that it will: (i) notify the Agent promptly of the time when any subsequent amendment to the Registration Statement, other than documents incorporated by reference or amendments not related to the Shares, has been filed with the Commission and/or has become effective or any subsequent supplement to the Prospectus related to the Shares has been filed and of any request by the Commission for any amendment or supplement to the Registration Statement (insofar as it relates to the transactions contemplated hereby) or Prospectus or for additional information; (ii) prepare and file with the Commission, promptly upon the Agent's request, any amendments or supplements to the Registration Statement or Prospectus that, in the Agent's reasonable opinion, may be necessary or advisable in connection with the sale of the Shares by the Agent (*provided, however*, that the failure of the Agent to make such request shall not relieve the Company of any obligation or liability hereunder, or affect the Agent's right to rely on the representations and warranties made by the Company herein); (iii) not file any amendment or supplement to the Registration Statement or Prospectus, other than documents incorporated by reference, relating to the Shares or a security convertible into the Shares unless a copy thereof has been submitted to the Agent within a reasonable period of time before the filing and the Agent has not reasonably objected thereto (*provided, however*, that (A) the failure of the Agent to make such objection shall not relieve the Company of any obligation or liability hereunder, or affect the Agent's right to rely on the representations and warranties made by the Company herein), (B) the Company has no obligation to provide the Agent any advance copy of such filing or to provide the Agent an opportunity to object to such filing if the filing does not name the Agent or does not relate to a Placement or other transaction contemplated hereunder and (C) the only remedy that the Agent shall have with respect to the failure by the Company to provide the Agent with such copy or the filing of such amendment or supplement despite the Agent's objection shall be to cease making sales hereunder); (iv) furnish to the Agent at the time of filing thereof a copy of any document that upon filing is deemed to be incorporated by reference into the Registration Statement or Prospectus, except for those documents available via EDGAR; and (v) cause each amendment or supplement to the Prospectus, other than documents incorporated by reference, to be filed with the Commission as required pursuant to the applicable paragraph of Rule 424(b) of the Securities Act.

(b) *Stop Order.* The Company will advise the Agent, promptly after it receives notice or obtains knowledge thereof, of the issuance or threatened issuance by the Commission of any stop order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement, of the suspension of the qualification of the Shares for offering or sale in any jurisdiction, or of the initiation or threatening of any proceeding for any such purpose, and it will promptly use its commercially reasonable efforts to prevent the issuance of any stop order or to obtain its withdrawal if such a stop order should be issued.

(c) *Continuing Amendments.* During any period in which a Prospectus relating to the Shares is required to be delivered by the Agent under the Securities Act with respect to any Placement or pending sale of the Shares, (including in circumstances where such requirement may be satisfied pursuant to Rule 172 under the Securities Act or any similar rule), the Company will comply with all requirements imposed upon it by the Securities Act, as from time to time in force, and to file on or before their respective due dates all reports (taking into account any extensions available under the Exchange Act) and any definitive proxy or information statements required to be filed by the Company with the Commission pursuant to Sections 13(a), 13(c), 14, 15(d) or any other provision of or under the Exchange Act. If during such period any event occurs as a result of which the Prospectus as then amended or supplemented would include an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances then existing, not misleading, or if during such period it is necessary to amend or supplement the Registration Statement or Prospectus to comply with the Securities Act, the Company will promptly notify the Agent to suspend the offering of Shares during such period and the Company will promptly amend or supplement the Registration Statement or Prospectus (at the expense of the Company) so as to correct such statement or omission or effect such compliance.

(d) *Qualification of the Shares.* The Company shall take or cause to be taken all necessary action to qualify the Shares for sale under the securities laws of such jurisdictions as the Agent reasonably designates and to continue such qualifications in effect so long as required for the distribution of the Shares, except that the Company shall not be required in connection therewith to qualify as a foreign corporation or to execute a general consent to service of process in any state. The Company shall promptly advise the Agent of the receipt by the Company of any notification with respect to the suspension of the qualification of the Shares for offer or sale in any jurisdiction or the initiation or threatening of any proceeding for such purpose.

(e) *Copies of Registration Statement and Prospectus.* The Company will furnish to the Agent and counsel for the Agent copies of the Registration Statement (which will include a complete, electronic, manually signed PDF copy of the Registration Statement and all consents and exhibits filed therewith), the Prospectus and all amendments and supplements to such documents, in each case as soon as available and in such quantities as the Agent may from time to time reasonably request.

(f) *Section 11(a).* The Company will make generally available to its security holders as soon as practicable an earnings statement (which need not be audited) covering a 12-month period that shall satisfy the provisions of Section 11(a) of the Securities Act and Rule 158 promulgated thereunder.

(g) *Expenses.* The Company, whether or not the transactions contemplated hereunder are consummated or this Agreement is terminated, will pay or cause to be paid (i) all expenses (including stock or transfer taxes and stamp or similar duties allocated to the respective transferees) incurred in connection with the registration, issue, sale and delivery of the Shares, (ii) all expenses and fees (including, without limitation, fees and expenses of the Company's accountants and counsel) in connection with the preparation, printing, filing, delivery, and shipping of the Registration Statement (including the financial statements therein and all amendments, schedules, and exhibits thereto), the Shares, the Prospectus and any amendment thereof or supplement thereto, and

the producing, word-processing, printing, delivery, and shipping of this Agreement and other underwriting documents or closing documents and including the cost to furnish copies of each thereof to the Agent, (iii) all filing fees, (iv) the fees and expenses of any transfer agent or registrar, (v) the filing fees and fees and disbursements of Agent's counsel incident to any required review and approval by FINRA of the terms of the sale of the Shares (such fees and disbursements of counsel not to exceed \$15,000), (vi) listing fees, if any, (vii) the cost and expenses of the Company relating to investor presentations or any "roadshow" undertaken in connection with marketing of the Shares, and (viii) all other costs and expenses incident to the performance of its obligations hereunder that are not otherwise specifically provided for herein. In addition to (v) above, the Company shall reimburse the Agent for its out-of-pocket expenses, including reasonable fees and disbursements of the Agent's counsel actually incurred in connection with this Agreement, the Registration Statement, the Prospectus and ongoing services in connection with the transactions contemplated hereunder, in an amount not to exceed \$50,000.

(h) *Use of Proceeds.* The Company will apply the net proceeds from the sale of the Shares in the manner disclosed in the Prospectus.

(i) *Restrictions on Future Sales.* The Company will not offer for sale, sell, contract to sell, pledge, grant any option for the sale of, enter into any transaction which is designed to, or might reasonably be expected to, result in the disposition (whether by actual disposition or effective economic disposition due to cash settlement or otherwise) by the Company or any of its affiliates, or otherwise issue or dispose of, directly or indirectly (or publicly disclose the intention to make any such offer, sale, pledge, grant, issuance or other disposition), any Common Stock or any securities convertible into or exchangeable for, or any options or rights to purchase or acquire, Common Stock, or permit the registration under the Securities Act of any Common Stock or such securities, options or rights, without giving the Agent at least two business days' prior written notice (or such shorter period mutually agreed to by the Company and the Agent with respect to a particular proposed transaction) specifying the date and nature of the proposed transaction; *provided* that no such notice shall be required for (i) the registration of the Shares and the sales through the Agent pursuant to this Agreement, (ii) sales through any dividend reinvestment or stock purchase plan of the Company, (iii) shares of restricted stock, restricted stock units and options granted pursuant to employee benefit plans and the Common Stock issuable upon the exercise of such outstanding options or the vesting of such restricted stock units and (iv) the issuance of shares pursuant to the exercise of warrants.

(j) *No Stabilization or Manipulation.* The Company has not taken and will not take, directly or indirectly, any action designed to, or which might reasonably be expected to cause or result in, or which constitutes: (i) the stabilization or manipulation of the price of the Common Stock or any other security of the Company to facilitate the sale or resale of the Shares and (ii) a violation of Regulation M. The Company shall notify the Agent of any violation of Regulation M by the Company or any of its subsidiaries or any of their respective officers or directors promptly after the Company has received notice or obtained knowledge of any such violation. The Company shall not invest in futures contracts, options on futures contracts or options on commodities, unless the Company is exempt from the registration requirements of the Commodity Exchange Act, as amended (the "*Commodity Act*"), or otherwise complies with the Commodity Act. The Company will not

engage in any activities bearing on the Commodity Act, unless such activities are exempt from the Commodity Act or otherwise comply with the Commodity Act.

(k) *No Other Broker.* Except as contemplated by this Agreement, the Company will not incur any liability for any finder's or broker's fee or agent's commission in connection with the execution and delivery of this Agreement, or the consummation of the transactions contemplated hereby.

(l) *Timely Securities Act and Exchange Act Reports.* During any prospectus delivery period, the Company will use its commercially reasonable efforts to file on a timely basis with the Commission such periodic and special reports as required by the Securities Act and the Exchange Act.

(m) *Internal Controls.* The Company and its subsidiaries will maintain such controls and other procedures, including without limitation, those required by Sections 302 and 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act and the applicable regulations thereunder, that are designed to ensure that information required to be disclosed by the Company in the reports that it files or submits under the Exchange Act is recorded, processed, summarized and reported within the time periods specified in the rules and forms of the Commission, including without limitation, controls and procedures designed to ensure that information required to be disclosed by the Company in the reports that it files or submits under the Exchange Act is accumulated and communicated to the Company's management, including its principal executive officer and its principal financial officer, or persons performing similar functions, as appropriate to allow timely decisions regarding required disclosure, to ensure that material information relating to Company, including its subsidiaries, is made known to them by others within those entities.

(n) *Permitted Free Writing Prospectus.* The Company represents and agrees that, unless it obtains the prior written consent of the Agent, and the Agent severally represents and agrees that, unless it obtains the prior written consent of the Company, it has not made and will not make any offer relating to the Shares that would constitute an "issuer free writing prospectus" (as defined in Rule 433 under the Securities Act) or that would otherwise constitute a "free writing prospectus" (as defined in Rule 405 under the Securities Act) required to be filed with the Commission. Any such free writing prospectus consented to by the Company and the Agent is herein called a "**Permitted Free Writing Prospectus.**" The Company represents that it has treated or agrees that it will treat each Permitted Free Writing Prospectus as an issuer free writing prospectus and has complied and will comply with the requirements of Rule 433 under the Securities Act applicable to any Permitted Free Writing Prospectus, including timely filing with the Commission where required, legending and record keeping.

(o) *Representation Date and Opinions of Counsel.* On or prior to the date of the first Placement Notice and thereafter during the term of this Agreement, each time the Company (i) files an amendment to the Registration Statement or the Prospectus (other than relating solely to the offering of securities other than the Shares), (ii) files an annual report on Form 10-K under the Exchange Act or a quarterly report on Form 10-Q under the Exchange Act or (iii) files a report on Form 8-K under the Exchange Act containing amended financial

statements, other than an earnings release (each, a “**Representation Date**”), to which a waiver described in Section 3(r) hereof does not apply, the Company shall cause:

(i) Morgan, Lewis & Bockius LLP, counsel for the Company, to furnish to the Agent the opinion and negative assurance letter of such counsel, dated as of such date and addressed to the Agent, in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to the Agent; *provided however*, only a negative assurance letter of such counsel shall be required for each subsequent Representation Date; *provided further*, that, in lieu of such negative assurance letter for each subsequent Representation Date, Morgan, Lewis & Bockius LLP may furnish to the Agent a letter to the effect that the Agent may rely on a prior negative assurance letter delivered under this Section 3(o)(i) to the same extent as if it were dated the date of such letter (except that the statements in such prior negative assurance letter shall be deemed to relate to the Registration Statement and the Prospectus as amended or supplemented at such Representation Date); and

(ii) the Company’s Assistant General Counsel – Intellectual Property, Legal Department to furnish to the Agent the opinion of such counsel, dated as of such date and addressed to the Agent, in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to the Agent; *provided, however*, the opinion of counsel shall only be required for the first Settlement Date.

(p) *Representation Date and Comfort Letters.* On or prior to the date of the first Placement Notice and thereafter during the term of this Agreement, on each Representation Date to which a waiver described in Section 3(r) hereof does not apply, the Company shall cause each of Moss Adams LLP, Ernst & Young LLP, and/or other independent accountants reasonably satisfactory to the Agent, to deliver to the Agent a letter, each dated as of such date and addressed to Agent, confirming that they are independent public accountants within the meaning of the Securities Act and are in compliance with the applicable requirements relating to the qualifications of accountants under Rule 2-01 of Regulation S-X of the Commission, and stating the conclusions and findings of said firm with respect to the financial information and other matters covered by its letter, each in form and substance satisfactory to the Agent and of the same tenor as the first of each such letter received hereunder.

(q) *Representation Date and Representation Certificate.* On or prior to the date of the First Placement Notice and thereafter during the term of this Agreement, on each Representation Date to which a waiver described in Section 3(r) hereof does not apply, the Company shall furnish to the Agent a certificate (the “**Representation Certificate**”), substantially in the form of Schedule 3 hereto, dated as of such date and addressed to the Agent and signed by the chief executive officer and by the chief financial officer of the Company.

(r) *Waiver of Opinions, Comfort Letters and Representation Certificates.* Notwithstanding Sections 3(o), 3(p) and 3(q) hereof, the requirements to provide opinions of counsel opinion, a comfort letter and a Representation Certificate under such sections shall be waived for any Representation Date occurring at a time at which no Placement Notice is pending, which waiver shall continue until the date the Company delivers a Placement Notice to the Agent. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if the Company issues a Placement Notice following a Representation Date when the Company relied on such waiver and did not provide the Agent with opinions of counsel, a comfort letter and a Representation Certificate under such sections, then

before the Agent sells any Shares pursuant to Section 2(a) hereof, the Company shall cause the opinions of counsel, the comfort letter and the Representation Certificate that would have been delivered on such Representation Date to be delivered in connection with such Placement Notice.

(s) *Disclosure of Shares Sold.* The Company shall disclose in its quarterly reports on Form 10-Q and in its annual report on Form 10-K the number of the Shares sold through the Agent hereunder, the net proceeds to the Company and the compensation paid by the Company with respect to such sales during the relevant quarter.

(t) *Continued Listing of Shares.* The Company shall use its commercially reasonable efforts to maintain the listing of the Common Stock on the Exchange.

(u) *Notice of Changes.* At any time during the term of this Agreement, as supplemented from time to time, the Company shall advise the Agent immediately after it shall have received notice or obtained knowledge thereof, of any information or fact that would alter or affect any opinion, certificate, letter and other document provided to the Agent pursuant to this Section 3.

(v) *Maximum Amount.* The Company will not instruct the Agent to sell or otherwise attempt to sell Shares pursuant to this Agreement in excess of the Maximum Amount.

4. Conditions of Agent's Obligations. The obligations of the Agent hereunder are subject to (i) the accuracy, as of each Representation Date, each date of sale of any Shares, and each Settlement Date (in each case, as if made at such date) of and compliance with all representations, warranties and agreements of the Company contained herein, (ii) the performance by the Company of its obligations hereunder and (iii) the following additional conditions:

(a) *Continuing Amendments; No Stop Order.* If filing of the Prospectus, or any amendment or supplement thereto, or any Permitted Free Writing Prospectus, is required under the Securities Act, the Company shall have filed the Prospectus (or such amendment or supplement) or such Permitted Free Writing Prospectus with the Commission in the manner and within the time period so required (without reliance on Rule 424(b)(8) or Rule 164(b) under the Securities Act); the Registration Statement shall be effective; no stop order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement or any part thereof, any Rule 462(b) Registration Statement, or any amendment thereof, nor suspending or preventing the use of the Prospectus shall have been issued; no proceedings for the issuance of such an order shall have been initiated or threatened; and any request of the Commission for additional information (to be included in the Registration Statement, the Prospectus or otherwise) shall have been complied with to the Agent's satisfaction.

(b) *Absence of Certain Events.* None of the following events shall have occurred and be continuing: (i) receipt by the Company or any of its subsidiaries of any request for additional information from the Commission or any other federal or state governmental authority during the period of effectiveness of the Registration Statement, the response to which would require any post-effective amendments or supplements to the Registration Statement or the Prospectus; (ii) the issuance by the Commission or any other federal or state governmental authority of any stop order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement or the

initiation of any proceedings for that purpose; (iii) receipt by the Company of any notification with respect to the suspension of the qualification or exemption from qualification of any of the Shares for sale in any jurisdiction or the initiation or threatening of any proceeding for such purpose; or (iv) the occurrence of any event that makes any material statement made in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus or any material document incorporated or deemed to be incorporated therein by reference untrue in any material respect or that requires the making of any changes in the Registration Statement, related Prospectus or such documents so that, in the case of the Registration Statement, it will not contain any materially untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state any material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading and, that in the case of the Prospectus, it will not contain any materially untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state any material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading.

(c) *No Material Misstatement or Omission.* The Agent shall not have advised the Company that the Registration Statement or the Prospectus contains an untrue statement of fact which, in the Agent's opinion, is material, or omits to state a fact which, in the Agent's opinion, is material and is required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading.

(d) *No Adverse Changes.* Except as contemplated in the Prospectus, neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries shall have incurred any material liabilities or obligations, direct or contingent, or entered into any material transactions, or declared or paid any dividends or made any distribution of any kind with respect to its capital stock subsequent to the respective dates as of which information is given in the Prospectus; and there shall not have been any change in the capital stock (other than a change in the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock due to the issuance of shares of Common Stock upon the exercise of outstanding options or warrants), or any material change in the short-term or long-term debt of the Company, or any issuance of options, warrants, convertible securities or other rights to purchase the capital stock of the Company or any of its subsidiaries, or any Material Adverse Effect or any development involving a prospective Material Adverse Effect (whether or not arising in the ordinary course of business), or any loss by strike, fire, flood, earthquake, accident or other calamity, whether or not covered by insurance, incurred by the Company or any subsidiary, the effect of which, in any such case described above, in the Agent's judgment, makes it impractical or inadvisable to offer or deliver the Shares on the terms and in the manner contemplated in the Prospectus.

(e) *No Rating Downgrade.* On or after the date of sale of any Shares, (i) no downgrading shall have occurred in the rating accorded any of the Company's securities by any "nationally recognized statistical organization" (as defined by the Commission for purposes of Rule 436(g)(2) under the Securities Act) and (ii) no such organization shall have publicly announced that it has under surveillance or review, with possible negative implications, its rating of any of the Company's securities.

(f) *Compliance with Certain Obligations.* The Company shall have performed each of its obligations under Sections 3(o), 3(p) and 3(q) hereof.

(g) *Opinion of Agent Counsel.* On each Representation Date to which a waiver described in Section 3(r) hereof does not apply, there shall have been furnished to the Agent the opinion and negative assurance letter of Latham & Watkins LLP, counsel for the Agent, dated as of such Representation Date and addressed to Agent, in a form reasonably satisfactory to the Agent, and such counsel shall have received such papers and information as they request to enable them to pass upon such matters; *provided however*, the opinion of Latham & Watkins LLP shall only be required prior to the first Placement Notice, and thereafter, only a negative assurance letter of such counsel shall be required for each subsequent Representation Date.

(h) *Representation Certificate.* On or prior to the first Placement Notice, the Agent shall have received the Representation Certificate in form and substance satisfactory to the Agent and its counsel.

(i) *No Objection by FINRA.* FINRA shall have raised no objection to the fairness and reasonableness of the underwriting terms and arrangements.

(j) *Timely Filing of Prospectus and Prospectus Supplements.* All filings with the Commission required by Rule 424 under the Securities Act to have been filed by the Settlement Date, as the case may be, shall have been made within the applicable time period prescribed for such filing by Rule 424 under the Securities Act.

(k) *Additional Documents and Certificates.* The Company shall have furnished to the Agent and the Agent's counsel such additional documents, certificates and evidence as they may have reasonably requested.

All opinions, certificates, letters and other documents described in this Section 4 will be in compliance with the provisions hereof only if they are reasonably satisfactory in form and substance to the Agent and the Agent's counsel. The Company will furnish the Agent with such conformed copies of such opinions, certificates, letters and other documents as the Agent shall reasonably request.

5. *Indemnification and Contribution.*

(a) *Company Indemnification.* The Company agrees to indemnify and hold harmless the Agent, each of its affiliates, directors, officers and employees, and each person, if any, who controls the Agent within the meaning of Section 15 of the Securities Act or Section 20 of the Exchange Act (each, a "***Company Indemnified Party***"), against any losses, claims, damages or liabilities, joint or several, to which such Company Indemnified Party may become subject, under the Securities Act or otherwise (including in settlement of any litigation if such settlement is effected with the written consent of the Company), insofar as such losses, claims, damages or liabilities (or actions in respect thereof) arise out of or are based upon, in whole or in part:

(i) any untrue statement or alleged untrue statement of a material fact contained in the Registration Statement (including the Rule 430B Information (as defined below) and any other information deemed to be part of the Registration Statement at the time of its effectiveness and at any subsequent time pursuant to the Securities Act or the Exchange Act), the Prospectus or any amendment or supplement thereto (including any

documents filed under the Exchange Act and deemed to be incorporated by reference into the Prospectus), or any Permitted Free Writing Prospectus, or any omission or alleged omission to state therein a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading,

- (ii) any inaccuracy in the representations and warranties of the Company contained herein;
- (i) any investigation or proceeding by any governmental authority, commenced or threatened (whether or not the Agent is a target of or party to such investigation or proceeding);
- (ii) any failure of the Company to perform its respective obligations hereunder or under applicable law;

and will reimburse a Company Indemnified Party for any legal or other expenses reasonably incurred by it in connection with investigating or defending against such loss, claim, damage, liability or action; *provided, however*, that the Company shall not be liable in any such case of (i) through (iv) to the extent that any such loss, claim, damage, liability or action arises out of or is based upon an untrue statement or alleged untrue statement or omission or alleged omission made in or omitted from the Registration Statement, the Prospectus, or any such amendment or supplement, in reliance upon and in conformity with written information furnished to the Company by Agent specifically for use in the preparation thereof. As used herein, **“Rule 430B Information”** means information with respect to the Shares and the offering thereof permitted to be omitted from the Registration Statement when it becomes effective pursuant to Rule 430B under the Securities Act.

(b) *Agent Indemnification.* The Agent will indemnify and hold harmless the Company, each of its directors, each of its officers who signs the Registration Statement and each person, if any, who controls the Company within the meaning of Section 15 of the Securities Act or Section 20 of the Exchange Act (each, an **“Agent Indemnified Party”**) against any losses, claims, damages or liabilities to which such Agent Indemnified Party may become subject, under the Securities Act or otherwise (including in settlement of any litigation, if such settlement is effected with the written consent of the Agent), but only insofar as such losses, claims, damages or liabilities (or actions in respect thereof) arise out of or are based upon an untrue statement or alleged untrue statement of a material fact contained in the Registration Statement, the Prospectus or any amendment or supplement thereto, or any Free Writing Prospectus, or arise out of or are based upon the omission or alleged omission to state therein a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading, in each case to the extent, but only to the extent, that such untrue statement or alleged untrue statement or omission or alleged omission was made in conformity with written information furnished to the Company by the Agent specifically for use in the preparation thereof, and will reimburse such Agent Indemnified Party for any legal or other expenses reasonably incurred by such Agent Indemnified Party in connection with investigating or defending against any such loss, claim, damage, liability or action (whether or not such Agent Indemnified Party is a party thereto), whether threatened or commenced, based upon any such untrue statement or omission, or any such alleged untrue statement or omission, as such expenses are incurred, it being understood and agreed that the only information furnished by the Agent for use in the Registration Statement or

the Prospectus consists of the statements set forth in the sixth paragraph and the first sentence of the seventh paragraph under the caption “Plan of Distribution” in the Prospectus.

(c) *Notice and Procedures.* Promptly after receipt by an indemnified party under Section 5(a) or 5(b) hereof of notice of the commencement of any action, such indemnified party shall, if a claim in respect thereof is to be made against the indemnifying party under such subsection, notify the indemnifying party in writing of the commencement thereof; but the omission so to notify the indemnifying party shall not relieve the indemnifying party from any liability that it may have to any indemnified party except to the extent such indemnifying party has been materially prejudiced (through the forfeiture of substantive rights or defenses) by such failure. In case any such action shall be brought against any indemnified party, and it shall notify the indemnifying party of the commencement thereof, the indemnifying party shall be entitled to participate in, and, to the extent that it shall wish, jointly with any other indemnifying party similarly notified, to assume the defense thereof, with counsel reasonably satisfactory to such indemnified party, and after notice from the indemnifying party to such indemnified party of the indemnifying party’s election so to assume the defense thereof, the indemnifying party shall not be liable to such indemnified party under such subsection for any legal or other expenses subsequently incurred by such indemnified party in connection with the defense thereof other than reasonable costs of investigation; *provided, however*, that if, in the reasonable judgment of the Agent, it is advisable for the Agent to be represented by separate counsel, the Agent shall have the right to employ a single counsel to represent the Agent, in which event the reasonable fees and expenses of such separate counsel shall be borne by the indemnifying party or parties and reimbursed to the Agent as incurred (in accordance with the provisions of the second paragraph of Section 5(a) hereof).

The indemnifying party under this Section 5 shall not be liable for any settlement of any proceeding effected without its written consent, but if settled with such consent or if there be a final judgment for the plaintiff, the indemnifying party agrees to indemnify the indemnified party against any loss, claim, damage, liability or expense by reason of such settlement or judgment. Notwithstanding the foregoing sentence, if at any time an indemnified party shall have requested an indemnifying party to reimburse the indemnified party for fees and expenses of counsel as contemplated by this Section 5, the indemnifying party agrees that it shall be liable for any settlement of any proceeding effected without its written consent if (i) such settlement is entered into more than 30 days after receipt by such indemnifying party of the aforesaid request, (ii) such indemnifying party shall have received notice of the terms of such settlement at least 30 days prior to such settlement being entered into and (iii) such indemnifying party shall not have reimbursed the indemnified party in accordance with such request prior to the date of such settlement. No indemnifying party shall, without the prior written consent of the indemnified party, effect any settlement, compromise or consent to the entry of judgment in any pending or threatened action, suit or proceeding in respect of which any indemnified party is or could have been a party and indemnity was or could have been sought hereunder by such indemnified party, unless such settlement, compromise or consent (a) includes an unconditional release of such indemnified party from all liability on claims that are the subject matter of such action, suit or proceeding and (b) does not include a statement as to or an admission of fault, culpability or a failure to act by or on behalf of any indemnified party.

(d) *Contribution; Limitations on Liability; Non-Exclusive Remedy.* If the indemnification provided for in this Section 5 is unavailable or insufficient to hold harmless an indemnified party under Section 5(a) or (b) above, then each indemnifying party shall contribute to the amount paid or payable by such indemnified party as a result of the losses, claims, damages or liabilities referred to in Section 5(a) or (b) above, (i) in such proportion as is appropriate to reflect the relative benefits received by the Company on the one hand and the Agent on the other from the offering of the Shares, or (ii) if the allocation provided by clause (i) above is not permitted by applicable law, in such proportion as is appropriate to reflect not only the relative benefits referred to in clause (i) above but also the relative fault of the Company on the one hand and the Agent on the other in connection with the statements or omissions that resulted in such losses, claims, damages or liabilities, as well as any other relevant equitable considerations. The relative benefits received by the Company on the one hand and the Agent on the other shall be deemed to be in the same proportion as the total net proceeds from the offering (before deducting expenses) received by the Company bear to the total Sales Commissions received by the Agent (before deducting expenses) from the sale of the Shares. The relative fault shall be determined by reference to, among other things, whether the untrue or alleged untrue statement of a material fact or the omission or alleged omission to state a material fact relates to information supplied by the Company or the Agent, the intent of the parties and their relative knowledge, access to information and opportunity to correct or prevent such untrue statement or omission. The Company and the Agent agree that it would not be just and equitable if contributions pursuant to this Section 5(d) were to be determined by pro rata allocation or by any other method of allocation which does not take account of the equitable considerations referred to in this Section 5(d). The amount paid or payable by an indemnified party as a result of the losses, claims, damages or liabilities referred to in this Section 5(d) shall be deemed to include any legal or other expenses reasonably incurred by such indemnified party in connection with investigating or defending against any action or claim which is the subject of this Section 5(d). Notwithstanding the provisions of this Section 5(d), the Agent shall not be required to contribute any amount in excess of the Sales Commissions received by it hereunder. No person guilty of fraudulent misrepresentation (within the meaning of Section 11(f) of the Securities Act) shall be entitled to contribution from any person who was not guilty of such fraudulent misrepresentation.

(e) *Liabilities and Remedies Not Exclusive.* The liability of the Company under this Section 5 shall extend, upon the same terms and conditions, to each person, if any, who controls the Company within the meaning of the Securities Act, including each director of the Company (including each person who consented to be named in the Registration Statement and is about to become a director of the Company), and each officer of the Company who signed the Registration Statement.

6. *Representations and Agreements to Survive Delivery.* All representations, warranties, and agreements of the Company herein or in certificates delivered pursuant to this Agreement, including but not limited to the agreements of the Agent and the Company contained in Section 5 hereof, shall remain operative and in full force and effect regardless of any investigation made by or on behalf of the Agent or any controlling person thereof, or the Company or any of its officers, directors, or controlling persons, and shall survive delivery of, and payment for, the Shares to and by the Agent hereunder.

7. Termination of this Agreement.

(a) The Company shall have the right, by giving written notice as hereinafter specified, to terminate the provisions of this Agreement relating to the solicitation of offers to purchase the Shares in its sole discretion at any time. Any such termination shall be without liability of any party to any other party except that (i) with respect to any pending sale, through the Agent for the Company, the obligations of the Company, including in respect of compensation of the Agent, shall remain in full force and effect notwithstanding the termination and (ii) the provisions of Sections 3(g), 5 and 6 hereof shall remain in full force and effect notwithstanding such termination.

(b) The Agent shall have the right, by giving written notice as hereinafter specified, to terminate the provisions of this Agreement relating to the solicitation of offers to purchase the Shares in its sole discretion at any time. Any such termination shall be without liability of any party to any other party except that the provisions of Sections 3(g), 5 and 6 hereof shall remain in full force and effect notwithstanding such termination.

(c) Unless earlier terminated pursuant to this Section 7, this Agreement shall automatically terminate upon the issuance and sale of all of the Shares through the Agent on the terms and subject to the conditions set forth herein, except that the provisions of Sections 3(g), 5 and 6 hereof shall remain in full force and effect notwithstanding such termination.

(d) This Agreement shall remain in full force and effect unless terminated pursuant to Section 7(a), 7(b) or 7(c) hereof or otherwise by mutual agreement of the parties; provided that any such termination by mutual agreement shall in all cases be deemed to provide that Sections 3(g), 5 and 6 hereof shall remain in full force and effect.

(e) Any termination of this Agreement shall be effective on the date specified in such notice of termination; provided that such termination shall not be effective until the close of business on the date of receipt of such notice by the Agent or the Company, as the case may be. If such termination shall occur prior to the Settlement Date for any sale of the Shares, such sale shall settle in accordance with the provisions of Section 2(a)(vii) hereof.

8. Default by the Company. If the Company shall fail at any Settlement Date to sell and deliver the number of Shares which it is obligated to sell hereunder, then this Agreement shall terminate without any liability on the part of the Agent or, except as provided in Section 3(g) hereof, any non-defaulting party. No action taken pursuant to this Section 8 shall relieve the Company from liability, if any, in respect of such default, and the Company shall (a) hold the Agent harmless against any loss, claim or damage arising from or as a result of such default by the Company and (b) pay the Agent any Sales Commission to which it would otherwise be entitled absent such default.

9. Notices. Except as otherwise provided herein, all communications under this Agreement shall be in writing and, if to the Agent, shall be mailed, delivered or emailed to Piper Sandler & Co., U.S. Bancorp Center, 800 Nicollet Mall, Minneapolis, MN 55402, Attention: General Counsel (email: james.martin@psc.com), with a copy to Latham &

Watkins LLP, 330 N. Wabash Ave., Suite 2800, Chicago, IL 60611, Attention: Christopher Lueking (email: christopher.lueking@lw.com), and, if to the Company, shall be mailed, delivered or emailed to Aptevo Therapeutics Inc., 2401 4th Ave., Suite 1050, Seattle, WA 98121, Attention: Acting General Counsel (email: boussiosh@apvo.com), with a copy to Morgan, Lewis & Bockius LLP, One Federal Street, Boston, Massachusetts 02110, Attention: Carl Valenstein (email: carl.valenstein@morganlewis.com), or in each case to such other address as the person to be notified may have requested in writing. Any party hereto may change such address for notices by sending to the other parties hereto written notice of a new address for such purpose.

10. *Persons Entitled to Benefit of Agreement.* This Agreement shall inure to the benefit of and be binding upon the parties hereto and their respective successors and assigns and the controlling persons, officers and directors referred to in Section 5 hereof. Nothing herein is intended or shall be construed to give to any other person, firm or corporation any legal or equitable remedy or claim under or in respect of this Agreement or any provision herein contained. The term “successors and assigns” as herein used shall not include any purchaser, as such purchaser, of any of the Shares from the Agent.

11. *Absence of Fiduciary Relationship.* The Company, having been advised by counsel, acknowledges and agrees that: (a) the Agent has been retained solely to act as a sales agent in connection with the sale of the Shares and that no fiduciary, advisory or agency relationship between the Company (including any of the Company’s affiliates, including directors, equity holders, creditors, employees or agents (collectively, the “**Company Representatives**”)), on the one hand, and the Agent on the other, has been created or will be created in respect of any of the transactions contemplated hereby, irrespective of whether the Agent has advised or is advising the Company on other matters and irrespective of the use of the defined term “Agent”; (b) neither the Agent nor any of its affiliates, including directors, equity holders, creditors, employees or agents (collectively, the “**Agent Representatives**”), shall have any duty or obligation to the Company or any Company Representative except as set forth herein; (c) the price and other terms of any Placement executed pursuant to this Agreement, as well as the terms of this Agreement, are deemed acceptable to the Company and its counsel, following discussions and arms-length negotiations with the Agent; (d) the Company is capable of evaluating and understanding, and in fact has evaluated, understands and accepts the terms, risks and conditions of any Placement to be executed pursuant to this Agreement, and any other transactions contemplated hereby; (e) the Company has been advised that the Agent and the Agent Representatives are engaged in a broad range of transactions which may involve interests that differ from those of the Company and that the Agent and the Agent Representatives have no obligation to disclose any such interests and transactions to the Company by virtue of any fiduciary, advisory or agency relationship, or otherwise; (f) the Company has been advised that the Agent is acting, in respect of any Placement and the transactions contemplated hereby, solely for the benefit of the Agent, and not on behalf of the Company; and (g) the Company and the Company Representatives waive, to the fullest extent permitted by law, any claims that they may have against the Agent or any of the Agent Representatives for breach of fiduciary duty or alleged breach of fiduciary duty in respect of any Placement or any of the transactions contemplated hereby and agree that the Agent and the Agent Representatives shall have no liability (whether direct or indirect, in contract, tort or otherwise) to the Company or any of the Company Representatives in respect of any person asserting any claim

of breach of any fiduciary duty on behalf of or in right of the Company or any of the Company Representatives. Neither the Agent nor any Agent Representative has provided any legal, accounting, tax or regulatory advice with respect to the transactions contemplated hereby, and the Company has consulted its own legal, accounting, tax and regulatory advisors to the extent it has deemed appropriate.

12. Recognition of the U.S. Special Resolution Regimes.

(a) In the event that any Agent that is a Covered Entity becomes subject to a proceeding under a U.S. Special Resolution Regime, the transfer from such Agent of this Agreement, and any interest and obligation in or under this Agreement, will be effective to the same extent as the transfer would be effective under the U.S. Special Resolution Regime if this Agreement, and any such interest and obligation, were governed by the laws of the United States or a state of the United States.

(b) In the event that any Agent that is a Covered Entity or a BHC Act Affiliate of such Agent becomes subject to a proceeding under a U.S. Special Resolution Regime, Default Rights under this Agreement that may be exercised against such Agent are permitted to be exercised to no greater extent than such Default Rights could be exercised under the U.S. Special Resolution Regime if this Agreement were governed by the laws of the United States or a state of the United States.

(c) As used in this Section 12:

“**BHC Act Affiliate**” has the meaning assigned to the term “affiliate” in, and shall be interpreted in accordance with, 12 U.S.C. § 1841(k);

“**Covered Entity**” means any of the following: (i) a “covered entity” as that term is defined in, and interpreted in accordance with, 12 C.F.R. § 252.82(b); (ii) a “covered bank” as that term is defined in, and interpreted in accordance with, 12 C.F.R. § 47.3(b); or (iii) a “covered FSI” as that term is defined in, and interpreted in accordance with, 12 C.F.R. § 382.2(b);

“**Default Right**” has the meaning assigned to that term in, and shall be interpreted in accordance with, 12 C.F.R. §§ 252.81, 47.2 or 382.1, as applicable; and

“**U.S. Special Resolution Regime**” means each of (i) the Federal Deposit Insurance Act and the regulations promulgated thereunder and (ii) Title II of the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act and the regulations promulgated thereunder.

13. Governing Law and Waiver of Jury Trial. This Agreement and any transaction contemplated by this Agreement and any claim, controversy or dispute arising under or related thereto shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of New York without regard to principles of conflict of laws that would result in the application of any other law than the laws of the State of New York. THE COMPANY (ON ITS OWN BEHALF AND ON BEHALF OF ITS STOCKHOLDERS AND AFFILIATES) HEREBY IRREVOCABLY

WAIVES, TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ANY AND ALL RIGHT TO TRIAL BY JURY IN ANY LEGAL PROCEEDING ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING TO THIS AGREEMENT OR THE TRANSACTIONS CONTEMPLATED HEREBY.

14. Submission to Jurisdiction, Etc. Each party hereby submits to the exclusive jurisdiction of the U.S. federal and New York state courts sitting in the Borough of Manhattan, City of New York, in any suit or proceeding arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the transactions contemplated hereby. The parties hereby irrevocably and unconditionally waive any objection to the laying of venue of any lawsuit, action or other proceeding in such courts, and hereby further irrevocably and unconditionally waive and agree not to plead or claim in any such court that any such lawsuit, action or other proceeding brought in any such court has been brought in an inconvenient forum.

15. Counterparts. This Agreement may be executed in one or more counterparts, each of which shall be deemed an original, and all of which together shall constitute one and the same instrument. Counterparts may be delivered via facsimile or electronic mail (including, without limitation, “pdf”, “tif” or “jpg”) and any counterpart so delivered shall be deemed to have been duly and validly delivered and be valid and effective for all purposes.

16. Construction. The section and exhibit headings herein are for convenience only and shall not affect the construction hereof. References herein to any law, statute, ordinance, code, regulation, rule or other requirement of any governmental authority shall be deemed to refer to such law, statute, ordinance, code, regulation, rule or other requirement of any governmental authority as amended, reenacted, supplemented or superseded in whole or in part and in effect from time to time and also to all rules and regulations promulgated thereunder. This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement of the parties to this Agreement and supersedes all prior written or oral and all contemporaneous oral agreements, understandings and negotiations with respect to the subject matter hereof. This Agreement may not be amended or modified unless in writing by all of the parties hereto, and no condition herein (express or implied) may be waived unless waived in writing by each party whom the condition is meant to benefit.

[Signature Page Follows]

Please sign and return to the Company the enclosed duplicates of this letter whereupon this letter will become a binding agreement between the Company and the Agent in accordance with its terms.

Very truly yours,

APTEVO THERAPEUTICS INC.

By: /s/ Marvin L. White

Name: Marvin L. White

Title: President and Chief Executive Officer

Confirmed as of the date first above mentioned.

PIPER SANDLER & CO.

By: /s/ Jim Douglas
Name: Jim Douglas
Title: Managing Director

SCHEDULE 1

FORM OF PLACEMENT NOTICE

No Facsimile and No Voicemail

From: Aptevo Therapeutics Inc.

To: Piper Sandler & Co.

Attention:

Michael Bassett
Michael.Bassett@psc.com

Neil Riley
Neil.Riley@psc.com

Connor Anderson
Connor.Anderson@psc.com

Tom Wright
Thomas.Wright@psc.com

Jay Hershey
Jay.Hershey@psc.com

Date: [•], 20[•]

Subject: Aptevo Therapeutics Inc. – Equity Distribution Agreement – Placement Notice

Ladies and Gentlemen:

Pursuant to the terms and subject to the conditions contained in the Equity Distribution Agreement, dated December 14, 2020 (the “*Agreement*”), between Aptevo Therapeutics Inc. (the “*Company*”) and Piper Sandler & Co. (the “*Agent*”), the Company hereby requests that the Agent sell up to [•] shares of the Company’s common stock, par value \$0.001 per share, at a minimum market price of \$[•] per share. Sales should begin on the date of this Placement Notice and shall continue until [•]/[all such shares are sold].

SCHEDULE 2
NOTICE PARTIES

Aptevo Therapeutics Inc.

Marvin White
whitem@apvo.com

Jeff Lamothe
lamothe@apvo.com

Heather Boussios
BoussiosH@apvo.com

Daphne Taylor
TaylorD2@apvo.com

Piper Sandler & Co.

Michael Bassett
Michael.Bassett@psc.com

Neil Riley
Neil.Riley@psc.com

Connor Anderson
Connor.Anderson@psc.com

Tom Wright
Thomas.Wright@psc.com

Jay Hershey
Jay.Hershey@psc.com

SCHEDULE 3

FORM OF REPRESENTATION CERTIFICATE PURSUANT TO SECTION 3(Q) OF THE AGREEMENT

[Date]

Piper Sandler & Co.
800 Nicollet Mall
Minneapolis, MN 55402

Ladies and Gentlemen:

The undersigned, the duly qualified and elected [•], of Aptevo Therapeutics Inc., a Delaware corporation (the “*Company*”), does hereby certify in such capacity and on behalf of the Company, pursuant to Section 3(q) of the Equity Distribution Agreement, dated December 14, 2020 (the “*Equity Distribution Agreement*”), between the Company and Piper Sandler & Co., that to the best of the knowledge of the undersigned:

- (i) The representations and warranties of the Company in the Equity Distribution Agreement are true and correct, in all material respects, as if made at and as of the date of this certificate, and the Company has complied with all the agreements and satisfied all the conditions on its part to be performed or satisfied at or prior to the date of this certificate;
- (ii) No stop order or other order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement or any part thereof or any amendment thereof or the qualification of the Shares for offering or sale or notice that would prevent the use of the Registration Statement, nor suspending or preventing the use of the Prospectus or any Permitted Free Writing Prospectus, has been issued, and no proceeding for that purpose has been instituted or, to the Company’s knowledge, is threatened by the Commission or any state or regulatory body;
- (iii) The Shares have been duly and validly authorized by the Company and all corporate action required to be taken for the authorization, issuance and sale of the Shares has been validly and sufficiently taken;
- (iv) The signers of this certificate have carefully examined the Registration Statement, the Prospectus and any Permitted Free Writing Prospectus, and any amendments thereof or supplements thereto (including any documents filed under the Exchange Act and deemed to be incorporated by reference in the Prospectus and any Permitted Free Writing Prospectus), and:
 - (A) each part of the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, and any amendments thereof or supplements thereto (including any documents filed under the Exchange Act and deemed to be incorporated by reference into the Prospectus) contain, and contained when such part of the Registration Statement (or such amendment) became effective, all statements and information required to be included therein, each part of the Registration Statement, or any amendment thereof, does not

Schedule 3

contain, and did not contain, when such part of the Registration Statement (or such amendment) became effective, any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state, and did not omit to state when such part of the Registration Statement (or such amendment) became effective, any material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading, and the Prospectus, as amended or supplemented, does not include and did not include as of its date, or the time of first use within the meaning of the Securities Act, any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state and did not omit to state as of its date, or the time of first use within the meaning of the Securities Act, a material fact necessary to make the statements therein, in light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading;

- (B) at no time during the period that begins on the earlier of the date of such Prospectus or Permitted Free Writing Prospectus and the date such Prospectus or Permitted Free Writing Prospectus was filed with the Commission and ends on the date of this certificate did such Prospectus or Permitted Free Writing Prospectus, as then amended or supplemented, include an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state any material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading;
- (C) since the date of the Equity Distribution Agreement, there has occurred no event required to be set forth in an amended or supplemented prospectus which has not been so set forth, and there has been no document required to be filed under the Exchange Act that upon such filing would be deemed to be incorporated by reference into the Prospectus or any Permitted Free Writing Prospectus that has not been so filed;
- (D) except as stated in the Prospectus or any Permitted Free Writing Prospectus, the Company has not incurred any material liabilities or obligations, direct or contingent, or entered into any material transactions, not in the ordinary course of business, or declared or paid any dividends or made any distribution of any kind with respect to its capital stock, and except as disclosed in the Prospectus and any Permitted Free Writing Prospectus, there has not been any change in the capital stock (other than a change in the number of shares of outstanding Common Stock due to sales of Shares pursuant to the Equity Distribution Agreement or the issuance of shares of Common Stock upon the exercise of equity awards or warrants), or any material change in the short-term or long-term debt, or any Material Adverse Effect or any development involving a prospective Material Adverse Effect (whether or not arising in the ordinary course of business), or any loss by strike, fire, flood, earthquake, accident or other calamity, whether or not covered by insurance, incurred by the Company; and
- (E) except as stated in the Prospectus and any Permitted Free Writing Prospectus, there is not pending or, to the knowledge of the Company, threatened or contemplated, any action, suit or proceeding to which the Company is a party before or by any court or governmental agency, authority or body, or any arbitrator, which might result in a Material Adverse Effect.

Capitalized terms used herein without definition shall have the meanings given to such terms in the Equity Distribution Agreement.

Aptevo Therapeutics Inc.

By:

Name:

Title: [Chief Executive Officer]

By:

Name:

Title: [Chief Financial Officer]

Schedule 3

APTEVO THERAPEUTICS INC.,

Issuer

AND

[TRUSTEE],

Trustee

INDENTURE

Dated as of [●], 20__

Debt Securities

	PAGE
ARTICLE 1	1
DEFINITIONS	
Section 1.01	1
Definitions of Terms	
ARTICLE 2	5
ISSUE, DESCRIPTION, TERMS, EXECUTION, REGISTRATION AND EXCHANGE OF SECURITIES	
Section 2.01	5
Designation and Terms of Securities	
Section 2.02	8
Form of Securities and Trustee’s Certificate	
Section 2.03	8
Denominations: Provisions for Payment	
Section 2.04	10
Execution and Authentications	
Section 2.05	10
Registration of Transfer and Exchange	
Section 2.06	12
Temporary Securities	
Section 2.07	12
Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost or Stolen Securities	
Section 2.08	13
Cancellation	
Section 2.09	13
Benefits of Indenture	
Section 2.10	13
Authenticating Agent	
Section 2.11	14
Global Securities	
Section 2.12	15
CUSIP Numbers	
ARTICLE 3	15
REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES AND SINKING FUND PROVISIONS	
Section 3.01	15
Redemption	
Section 3.02	15
Notice of Redemption	
Section 3.03	16
Payment Upon Redemption	
Section 3.04	17
Sinking Fund	
Section 3.05	17
Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities	
Section 3.06	17
Redemption of Securities for Sinking Fund	
ARTICLE 4	18
COVENANTS	
Section 4.01	18
Payment of Principal, Premium and Interest	
Section 4.02	18
Maintenance of Office or Agency	
Section 4.03	19
Paying Agents	
Section 4.04	20
Appointment to Fill Vacancy in Office of Trustee	

TABLE OF CONTENTS
(CONTINUED)

	PAGE	
ARTICLE 5	SECURITYHOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY THE COMPANY AND THE TRUSTEE	20
Section 5.01	Company to Furnish Trustee Names and Addresses of Securityholders	20
Section 5.02	Preservation Of Information; Communications With Securityholders	20
Section 5.03	Reports by the Company	20
Section 5.04	Reports by the Trustee	21
ARTICLE 6	REMEDIES OF THE TRUSTEE AND SECURITYHOLDERS ON EVENT OF DEFAULT	22
Section 6.01	Events of Default	22
Section 6.02	Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee	23
Section 6.03	Application of Moneys Collected	25
Section 6.04	Limitation on Suits	25
Section 6.05	Rights and Remedies Cumulative; Delay or Omission Not Waiver	26
Section 6.06	Control by Securityholders	26
Section 6.07	Undertaking to Pay Costs	27
ARTICLE 7	CONCERNING THE TRUSTEE	27
Section 7.01	Certain Duties and Responsibilities of Trustee	27
Section 7.02	Certain Rights of Trustee	29
Section 7.03	Trustee Not Responsible for Recitals or Issuance of Securities	31
Section 7.04	May Hold Securities	31
Section 7.05	Moneys Held in Trust	31
Section 7.06	Compensation and Reimbursement	31
Section 7.07	Reliance on Officer's Certificate	32
Section 7.08	Disqualification; Conflicting Interests	32
Section 7.09	Corporate Trustee Required; Eligibility	33
Section 7.10	Resignation and Removal; Appointment of Successor	33
Section 7.11	Acceptance of Appointment By Successor	34
Section 7.12	Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business	35
Section 7.13	Preferential Collection of Claims Against the Company	36
Section 7.14	Notice of Default.	36

TABLE OF CONTENTS
(CONTINUED)

	PAGE	
ARTICLE 8	CONCERNING THE SECURITYHOLDERS	36
Section 8.01	Evidence of Action by Securityholders	36
Section 8.02	Proof of Execution by Securityholders	37
Section 8.03	Who May be Deemed Owners	37
Section 8.04	Certain Securities Owned by Company Disregarded	37
Section 8.05	Actions Binding on Future Securityholders	38
ARTICLE 9	SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES	38
Section 9.01	Supplemental Indentures Without the Consent of Securityholders	38
Section 9.02	Supplemental Indentures With Consent of Securityholders	39
Section 9.03	Effect of Supplemental Indentures	40
Section 9.04	Securities Affected by Supplemental Indentures	40
Section 9.05	Execution of Supplemental Indentures	40
ARTICLE 10	SUCCESSOR ENTITY	41
Section 10.01	Company May Consolidate, Etc.	41
Section 10.02	Successor Entity Substituted	41
ARTICLE 11	SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE	42
Section 11.01	Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture	42
Section 11.02	Discharge of Obligations	42
Section 11.03	Deposited Moneys to be Held in Trust	43
Section 11.04	Payment of Moneys Held by Paying Agents	43
Section 11.05	Repayment to Company	43
ARTICLE 12	IMMUNITY OF INCORPORATORS, STOCKHOLDERS, OFFICERS AND DIRECTORS	43
Section 12.01	No Recourse	43
ARTICLE 13	MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS	44
Section 13.01	Effect on Successors and Assigns	44
Section 13.02	Actions by Successor	44
Section 13.03	Surrender of Company Powers	44
Section 13.04	Notices	44
Section 13.05	Governing Law; Jury Trial Waiver	45

TABLE OF CONTENTS
(CONTINUED)

	PAGE	
Section 13.06	Treatment of Securities as Debt	45
Section 13.07	Certificates and Opinions as to Conditions Precedent	45
Section 13.08	Payments on Business Days	45
Section 13.09	Conflict with Trust Indenture Act	46
Section 13.10	Counterparts	46
Section 13.11	Separability	46
Section 13.12	Compliance Certificates	46
Section 13.13	Patriot Act	46
Section 13.14	Force Majeure	47
Section 13.15	Table of Contents; Headings	47

INDENTURE

INDENTURE, dated as of [•], 20__, among APTEVO THERAPEUTICS INC., a Delaware corporation (the “*Company*”), and [TRUSTEE], as trustee (the “*Trustee*”):

WHEREAS, for its lawful corporate purposes, the Company has duly authorized the execution and delivery of this Indenture to provide for the issuance of debt securities (hereinafter referred to as the “*Securities*”), in an unlimited aggregate principal amount to be issued from time to time in one or more series as in this Indenture provided, as registered Securities without coupons, to be authenticated by the certificate of the Trustee;

WHEREAS, to provide the terms and conditions upon which the Securities are to be authenticated, issued and delivered, the Company has duly authorized the execution of this Indenture; and

WHEREAS, all things necessary to make this Indenture a valid agreement of the Company, in accordance with its terms, have been done.

NOW, THEREFORE, in consideration of the premises and the purchase of the Securities by the holders thereof, it is mutually covenanted and agreed as follows for the equal and ratable benefit of the holders of Securities:

ARTICLE 1

DEFINITIONS

Section 1.01 Definitions of Terms.

The terms defined in this Section (except as in this Indenture or any indenture supplemental hereto otherwise expressly provided or unless the context otherwise requires) for all purposes of this Indenture and of any indenture supplemental hereto shall have the respective meanings specified in this Section and shall include the plural as well as the singular. All other terms used in this Indenture that are defined in the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, or that are by reference in such Act defined in the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (except as herein or any indenture supplemental hereto otherwise expressly provided or unless the context otherwise requires), shall have the meanings assigned to such terms in said Trust Indenture Act and in said Securities Act as in force at the date of the execution of this instrument.

“*Authenticating Agent*” means the Trustee or an authenticating agent with respect to all or any of the series of Securities appointed by the Trustee pursuant to Section 2.10.

“*Bankruptcy Law*” means Title 11, U.S. Code, or any similar federal or state law for the relief of debtors.

“*Board of Directors*” means the Board of Directors (or the functional equivalent thereof) of the Company or any duly authorized committee of such Board.

“**Board Resolution**” means a copy of a resolution certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company to have been duly adopted by the Board of Directors (or duly authorized committee thereof) and to be in full force and effect on the date of such certification.

“**Business Day**” means, with respect to any series of Securities, any day other than a day on which federal or state banking institutions in the Borough of Manhattan, the City of New York, or in the city of the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, are authorized or obligated by law, executive order or regulation to close.

“**Commission**” means the Securities and Exchange Commission, as from time to time constituted, created under the Exchange Act, or, if at any time after the execution of this instrument such Commission is not existing and performing the duties now assigned to it under the Trust Indenture Act, then the body performing such duties at such time.

“**Company**” means Aptevo Therapeutics Inc., a corporation duly organized and existing under the laws of the State of Delaware, and, subject to the provisions of Article Ten, shall also include its successors and assigns.

“**Corporate Trust Office**” means the office of the Trustee at which, at any particular time, its corporate trust business shall be principally administered, which office at the date hereof is located at _____

“**Custodian**” means any receiver, trustee, assignee, liquidator or similar official under any Bankruptcy Law.

“**Defaulted Interest**” has the meaning set forth in Section 2.03.

“**Depository**” means, with respect to Securities of any series for which the Company shall determine that such Securities will be issued as a Global Security, The Depository Trust Company, another clearing agency, or any successor registered as a clearing agency under the Exchange Act, or other applicable statute or regulation, which, in each case, shall be designated by the Company pursuant to either Section 2.01 or 2.11.

“**Event of Default**” means, with respect to Securities of a particular series, any event specified in Section 6.01, continued for the period of time, if any, therein designated.

“**Exchange Act**” means the United States Securities and Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, and the rules and regulations promulgated by the Commission thereunder.

“**Global Security**” means a Security issued to evidence all or a part of any series of Securities which is executed by the Company and authenticated and delivered by the Trustee to the Depository or pursuant to the Depository’s instruction, all in accordance with the Indenture, which shall be registered in the name of the Depository or its nominee.

“**Governmental Obligations**” means securities that are (a) direct obligations of the United States of America for the payment of which its full faith and credit is pledged or (b) obligations of a Person controlled or supervised by and acting as an agency or instrumentality of the United

States of America, the payment of which is unconditionally guaranteed as a full faith and credit obligation by the United States of America that, in either case, are not callable or redeemable at the option of the issuer thereof at any time prior to the stated maturity of the Securities, and shall also include a depositary receipt issued by a bank or trust company as custodian with respect to any such Governmental Obligation or a specific payment of principal of or interest on any such Governmental Obligation held by such custodian for the account of the holder of such depositary receipt; provided, however, that (except as required by law) such custodian is not authorized to make any deduction from the amount payable to the holder of such depositary receipt from any amount received by the custodian in respect of the Governmental Obligation or the specific payment of principal of or interest on the Governmental Obligation evidenced by such depositary receipt.

“*herein*”, “*hereof*” and “*hereunder*”, and other words of similar import, refer to this Indenture as a whole and not to any particular Article, Section or other subdivision.

“*Indenture*” means this instrument as originally executed or as it may from time to time be supplemented or amended by one or more indentures supplemental hereto entered into in accordance with the terms hereof and shall include the terms of particular series of Securities established as contemplated by Section 2.01.

“*Interest Payment Date*”, when used with respect to any installment of interest on a Security of a particular series, means the date specified in such Security or in a Board Resolution or in an indenture supplemental hereto with respect to such series as the fixed date on which an installment of interest with respect to Securities of that series is due and payable.

“*Officer*” means, with respect to the Company, the chairman of the Board of Directors, a chief executive officer, a president, a chief financial officer, a chief operating officer, any executive vice president, any senior vice president, any vice president, the treasurer or any assistant treasurer, the controller or any assistant controller or the secretary or any assistant secretary.

“*Officer’s Certificate*” means a certificate signed by any Officer. Each such certificate shall include the statements provided for in Section 13.07, if and to the extent required by the provisions thereof.

“*Opinion of Counsel*” means an opinion in writing subject to customary exceptions of legal counsel, who may be an employee of or counsel for the Company, that is delivered to the Trustee in accordance with the terms hereof. Each such opinion shall include the statements provided for in Section 13.07, if and to the extent required by the provisions thereof.

“*Outstanding*”, when used with reference to Securities of any series, means, subject to the provisions of Section 8.04, as of any particular time, all Securities of that series theretofore authenticated and delivered by the Trustee under this Indenture, except (a) Securities theretofore canceled by the Trustee or any paying agent, or delivered to the Trustee or any paying agent for cancellation or that have previously been canceled; (b) Securities or portions thereof for the payment or redemption of which moneys or Governmental Obligations in the necessary amount shall have been deposited in trust with the Trustee or with any paying agent (other than the

Company) or shall have been set aside and segregated in trust by the Company (if the Company shall act as its own paying agent); provided, however, that if such Securities or portions of such Securities are to be redeemed prior to the maturity thereof, notice of such redemption shall have been given as provided in Article Three, or provision satisfactory to the Trustee shall have been made for giving such notice; and (c) Securities in lieu of or in substitution for which other Securities shall have been authenticated and delivered pursuant to the terms of Section 2.07.

“**Person**” means any individual, corporation, partnership, joint venture, joint-stock company, limited liability company, association, trust, unincorporated organization, any other entity or organization, including a government or political subdivision or an agency or instrumentality thereof.

“**Predecessor Security**” of any particular Security means every previous Security evidencing all or a portion of the same debt as that evidenced by such particular Security; and, for the purposes of this definition, any Security authenticated and delivered under Section 2.07 in lieu of a lost, destroyed or stolen Security shall be deemed to evidence the same debt as the lost, destroyed or stolen Security.

“**Responsible Officer**” when used with respect to the Trustee means any officer within the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee (or any successor group of the Trustee) or any other officer of the Trustee customarily performing functions similar to those performed by any of the above designated officers and also means, with respect to a particular corporate trust matter, any other officer to whom such matter is referred because of his or her knowledge of and familiarity with the particular subject and in each case who shall have direct responsibility for the administration of this Indenture.

“**Securities**” has the meaning stated in the first recital of this Indenture and more particularly means any Securities authenticated and delivered under this Indenture.

“**Securities Act**” means the Securities Act of 1933, as amended.

“**Securityholder**”, “**holder of Securities**”, “**registered holder**”, or other similar term, means the Person or Persons in whose name or names a particular Security is registered on the Security Register kept for that purpose in accordance with the terms of this Indenture.

“**Security Register**” and “**Security Registrar**” shall have the meanings as set forth in Section 2.05.

“**Subsidiary**” means, with respect to any Person, any corporation, association, partnership or other business entity of which more than 50% of the total voting power of shares of capital stock or other interests (including partnership interests) entitled (without regard to the occurrence of any contingency) to vote in the election of directors, managers, general partners or trustees thereof is at the time owned or controlled, directly or indirectly, by (i) such Person; (ii) such Person and one or more Subsidiaries of such Person; or (iii) one or more Subsidiaries of such Person.

“*Trustee*” means _____, and, subject to the provisions of Article Seven, shall also include its successors and assigns, and, if at any time there is more than one Person acting in such capacity hereunder, “Trustee” shall mean each such Person. The term “Trustee” as used with respect to a particular series of the Securities shall mean the trustee with respect to that series.

“*Trust Indenture Act*” means the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended.

“*U.S.A. Patriot Act*” means the Uniting and Strengthening America by Providing Appropriate Tools Required to Intercept and Obstruct Terrorism Act of 2001, Pub. L. 107-56, as amended and signed into law October 26, 2001.

ARTICLE 2

ISSUE, DESCRIPTION, TERMS, EXECUTION, REGISTRATION AND EXCHANGE OF SECURITIES

Section 2.01 Designation and Terms of Securities.

(a) The aggregate principal amount of Securities that may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture is unlimited. The Securities may be issued in one or more series up to the aggregate principal amount of Securities of that series from time to time authorized by or pursuant to a Board Resolution or pursuant to one or more indentures supplemental hereto. Prior to the initial issuance of Securities of any series, there shall be established in or pursuant to a Board Resolution, and set forth in an Officer’s Certificate, or established in one or more indentures supplemental hereto:

- (1) the title of the Securities of the series (which shall distinguish the Securities of that series from all other Securities);
- (2) any limit upon the aggregate principal amount of the Securities of that series that may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture (except for Securities authenticated and delivered upon registration of transfer of, or in exchange for, or in lieu of, other Securities of that series);
- (3) the maturity date or dates on which the principal of the Securities of the series is payable;
- (4) the form of the Securities of the series including the form of the certificate of authentication for such series;
- (5) the applicability of any guarantees;
- (6) whether or not the Securities will be secured or unsecured, and the terms of any secured debt;
- (7) whether the Securities rank as senior debt, senior subordinated debt, subordinated debt or any combination thereof, and the terms of any subordination;

(8) if the price (expressed as a percentage of the aggregate principal amount thereof) at which such Securities will be issued is a price other than the principal amount thereof, the portion of the principal amount thereof payable upon declaration of acceleration of the maturity thereof, or if applicable, the portion of the principal amount of such Securities that is convertible into another security or the method by which any such portion shall be determined;

(9) the interest rate or rates, which may be fixed or variable, or the method for determining the rate and the date interest will begin to accrue, the dates interest will be payable and the regular record dates for interest payment dates or the method for determining such dates;

(10) the Company's right, if any, to defer the payment of interest and the maximum length of any such deferral period;

(11) if applicable, the date or dates after which, or the period or periods during which, and the price or prices at which, the Company may at its option, redeem the series of Securities pursuant to any optional or provisional redemption provisions and the terms of those redemption provisions;

(12) the date or dates, if any, on which, and the price or prices at which the Company is obligated, pursuant to any mandatory sinking fund or analogous fund provisions or otherwise, to redeem, or at the Securityholder's option to purchase, the series of Securities and the currency or currency unit in which the Securities are payable;

(13) the denominations in which the Securities of the series shall be issuable, if other than denominations of one thousand U.S. dollars (\$1,000) or any integral multiple thereof;

(14) any and all terms, if applicable, relating to any auction or remarketing of the Securities of that series and any security for the obligations of the Company with respect to such Securities and any other terms which may be advisable in connection with the marketing of Securities of that series;

(15) whether the Securities of the series shall be issued in whole or in part in the form of a Global Security or Securities; the terms and conditions, if any, upon which such Global Security or Securities may be exchanged in whole or in part for other individual Securities; and the Depositary for such Global Security or Securities;

(16) if applicable, the provisions relating to conversion or exchange of any Securities of the series and the terms and conditions upon which such Securities will be so convertible or exchangeable, including the conversion or exchange price, as applicable, or how it will be calculated and may be adjusted, any mandatory or optional (at the Company's option or the holders' option) conversion or exchange features, the applicable conversion or exchange period and the manner of settlement for any conversion or exchange, which may, without limitation, include the payment of cash as well as the delivery of securities;

- (17) if other than the full principal amount thereof, the portion of the principal amount of Securities of the series which shall be payable upon declaration of acceleration of the maturity thereof pursuant to Section 6.01;
- (18) additions to or changes in the covenants applicable to the series of Securities being issued, including, among others, the consolidation, merger or sale covenant;
- (19) additions to or changes in the Events of Default with respect to the Securities and any change in the right of the Trustee or the Securityholders to declare the principal, premium, if any, and interest, if any, with respect to such Securities to be due and payable;
- (20) additions to or changes in or deletions of the provisions relating to covenant defeasance and legal defeasance;
- (21) additions to or changes in the provisions relating to satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture;
- (22) additions to or changes in the provisions relating to the modification of this Indenture both with and without the consent of Securityholders of Securities issued under this Indenture;
- (23) the currency of payment of Securities if other than U.S. dollars and the manner of determining the equivalent amount in U.S. dollars;
- (24) whether interest will be payable in cash or additional Securities at the Company's or the Securityholders' option and the terms and conditions upon which the election may be made;
- (25) the terms and conditions, if any, upon which the Company shall pay amounts in addition to the stated interest, premium, if any and principal amounts of the Securities of the series to any Securityholder that is not a "United States person" for federal tax purposes;
- (26) any restrictions on transfer, sale or assignment of the Securities of the series; and
- (27) any other specific terms, preferences, rights or limitations of, or restrictions on, the Securities, any other additions or changes in the provisions of this Indenture, and any terms that may be required by us or advisable under applicable laws or regulations.

All Securities of any one series shall be substantially identical except as may otherwise be provided in or pursuant to any such Board Resolution or in any indentures supplemental hereto.

If any of the terms of the series are established by action taken pursuant to a Board Resolution of the Company, a copy of an appropriate record of such action shall be certified by the secretary or an assistant secretary of the Company and delivered to the Trustee at or prior to the delivery of the Officer's Certificate of the Company setting forth the terms of the series.

Securities of any particular series may be issued at various times, with different dates on which the principal or any installment of principal is payable, with different rates of interest, if any, or different methods by which rates of interest may be determined, with different dates on which such interest may be payable and with different redemption dates.

Section 2.02 Form of Securities and Trustee's Certificate.

The Securities of any series and the Trustee's certificate of authentication to be borne by such Securities shall be substantially of the tenor and purport as set forth in one or more indentures supplemental hereto or as provided in a Board Resolution, and set forth in an Officer's Certificate, and they may have such letters, numbers or other marks of identification or designation and such legends or endorsements printed, lithographed or engraved thereon as the Company may deem appropriate and as are not inconsistent with the provisions of this Indenture, or as may be required to comply with any law or with any rule or regulation made pursuant thereto or with any rule or regulation of any securities exchange on which Securities of that series may be listed, or to conform to usage.

Section 2.03 Denominations: Provisions for Payment.

The Securities shall be issuable as registered Securities and in the denominations of one thousand U.S. dollars (\$1,000) or any integral multiple thereof, subject to Section 2.01(a)(13). The Securities of a particular series shall bear interest payable on the dates and at the rate specified with respect to that series. Subject to Section 2.01(a)(23), the principal of and the interest on the Securities of any series, as well as any premium thereon in case of redemption or repurchase thereof prior to maturity, and any cash amount due upon conversion or exchange thereof, shall be payable in the coin or currency of the United States of America that at the time is legal tender for public and private debt, at the office or agency of the Company maintained for that purpose. Each Security shall be dated the date of its authentication. Interest on the Securities shall be computed on the basis of a 360-day year composed of twelve 30-day months.

The interest installment on any Security that is payable, and is punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date for Securities of that series shall be paid to the Person in whose name said Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the regular record date for such interest installment. In the event that any Security of a particular series or portion thereof is called for redemption and the redemption date is subsequent to a regular record date with respect to any Interest Payment Date and prior to such Interest Payment Date, interest on such Security will be paid upon presentation and surrender of such Security as provided in Section 3.03.

Any interest on any Security that is payable, but is not punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date for Securities of the same series (herein called "Defaulted Interest") shall forthwith cease to be payable to the registered holder on the relevant regular record date by virtue of having been such holder; and such Defaulted Interest shall be paid by the Company, at its election, as provided in clause (1) or clause (2) below:

(1) The Company may make payment of any Defaulted Interest on Securities to the Persons in whose names such Securities (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered at the close of business on a special record date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest, which shall be fixed in the following manner: the Company shall notify the Trustee in writing of the amount of Defaulted Interest proposed to be paid on each such Security and the date of the proposed payment, and at the same time the Company shall deposit with the Trustee an amount of money equal to the aggregate amount proposed to be paid in respect of such Defaulted Interest or shall make arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for such deposit prior to the date of the proposed payment, such money when deposited to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such Defaulted Interest as in this clause provided. Thereupon the Trustee shall fix a special record date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest which shall not be more than 15 nor less than 10 days prior to the date of the proposed payment and not less than 10 days after the receipt by the Trustee of the notice of the proposed payment. The Trustee shall promptly notify the Company of such special record date and, in the name and at the expense of the Company, shall cause notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the special record date therefor to be mailed, first class postage prepaid, to each Securityholder at his or her address as it appears in the Security Register (as hereinafter defined), not less than 10 days prior to such special record date. Notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the special record date therefor having been mailed as aforesaid, such Defaulted Interest shall be paid to the Persons in whose names such Securities (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered on such special record date.

(2) The Company may make payment of any Defaulted Interest on any Securities in any other lawful manner not inconsistent with the requirements of any securities exchange on which such Securities may be listed, and upon such notice as may be required by such exchange, if, after notice given by the Company to the Trustee of the proposed payment pursuant to this clause, such manner of payment shall be deemed practicable by the Trustee.

Unless otherwise set forth in a Board Resolution or one or more indentures supplemental hereto establishing the terms of any series of Securities pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof, the term "regular record date" as used in this Section with respect to a series of Securities and any Interest Payment Date for such series shall mean either the fifteenth day of the month immediately preceding the month in which an Interest Payment Date established for such series pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof shall occur, if such Interest Payment Date is the first day of a month, or the first day of the month in which an Interest Payment Date established for such series pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof shall occur, if such Interest Payment Date is the fifteenth day of a month, whether or not such date is a Business Day.

Subject to the foregoing provisions of this Section, each Security of a series delivered under this Indenture upon transfer of or in exchange for or in lieu of any other Security of such series shall carry the rights to interest accrued and unpaid, and to accrue, that were carried by such other Security.

Section 2.04 Execution and Authentications.

The Securities shall be signed on behalf of the Company by one of its Officers. Signatures may be in the form of a manual or facsimile signature.

The Company may use the facsimile signature of any Person who shall have been an Officer (at the time of execution), notwithstanding the fact that at the time the Securities shall be authenticated and delivered or disposed of such Person shall have ceased to be such an officer of the Company. The Securities may contain such notations, legends or endorsements required by law, stock exchange rule or usage. Each Security shall be dated the date of its authentication by the Trustee.

A Security shall not be valid until authenticated manually by an authorized signatory of the Trustee, or by an Authenticating Agent. Such signature shall be conclusive evidence that the Security so authenticated has been duly authenticated and delivered hereunder and that the holder is entitled to the benefits of this Indenture. At any time and from time to time after the execution and delivery of this Indenture, the Company may deliver Securities of any series executed by the Company to the Trustee for authentication, together with a written order of the Company for the authentication and delivery of such Securities, signed by an Officer, and the Trustee in accordance with such written order shall authenticate and deliver such Securities.

Upon the Company's delivery of any such authentication order to the Trustee at any time after the initial issuance of Securities under this Indenture, the Trustee shall be provided with, and (subject to Sections 315(a) through 315(d) of the Trust Indenture Act) shall be fully protected in relying upon, (1) an Opinion of Counsel or reliance letter and (2) an Officer's Certificate stating that all conditions precedent to the execution, authentication and delivery of such Securities are in conformity with the provisions of this Indenture.

The Trustee shall not be required to authenticate such Securities if the issue of such Securities pursuant to this Indenture will affect the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under the Securities and this Indenture or otherwise in a manner that is not reasonably acceptable to the Trustee.

Section 2.05 Registration of Transfer and Exchange.

(a) Securities of any series may be exchanged upon presentation thereof at the office or agency of the Company designated for such purpose, for other Securities of such series of authorized denominations, and for a like aggregate principal amount, upon payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge in relation thereto, all as provided in this Section. In respect of any Securities so surrendered for exchange, the Company shall execute, the Trustee shall authenticate and such office or agency shall deliver in exchange therefor the Security or Securities of the same series that the Securityholder making the exchange shall be entitled to receive, bearing numbers not contemporaneously outstanding.

(b) The Company shall keep, or cause to be kept, at its office or agency designated for such purpose a register or registers (herein referred to as the “Security Register”) in which, subject to such reasonable regulations as it may prescribe, the Company shall register the Securities and the transfers of Securities as in this Article provided and which at all reasonable times shall be open for inspection by the Trustee. The registrar for the purpose of registering Securities and transfer of Securities as herein provided shall be appointed as authorized by Board Resolution (the “Security Registrar”).

Upon surrender for transfer of any Security at the office or agency of the Company designated for such purpose, the Company shall execute, the Trustee shall authenticate and such office or agency shall deliver in the name of the transferee or transferees a new Security or Securities of the same series as the Security presented for a like aggregate principal amount.

All Securities presented or surrendered for exchange or registration of transfer, as provided in this Section, shall be accompanied (if so required by the Company or the Security Registrar) by a written instrument or instruments of transfer, in form satisfactory to the Company or the Security Registrar, duly executed by the registered holder or by such holder’s duly authorized attorney in writing.

(c) Except as provided pursuant to Section 2.01 pursuant to a Board Resolution, and set forth in an Officer’s Certificate, or established in one or more indentures supplemental to this Indenture, no service charge shall be made for any exchange or registration of transfer of Securities, or issue of new Securities in case of partial redemption of any series or repurchase, conversion or exchange of less than the entire principal amount of a Security, but the Company may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge in relation thereto, other than exchanges pursuant to Section 2.06, Section 3.03(b) and Section 9.04 not involving any transfer.

(d) The Company shall not be required (i) to issue, exchange or register the transfer of any Securities during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before the day of the mailing of a notice of redemption of less than all the Outstanding Securities of the same series and ending at the close of business on the day of such mailing, nor (ii) to register the transfer of or exchange any Securities of any series or portions thereof called for redemption or surrendered for repurchase, but not validly withdrawn, other than the unredeemed portion of any such Securities being redeemed in part or not surrendered for repurchase, as the case may be. The provisions of this Section 2.05 are, with respect to any Global Security, subject to Section 2.11 hereof.

The Trustee shall have no obligation or duty to monitor, determine or inquire as to compliance with any restrictions on transfer imposed under this Indenture or under applicable law with respect to any transfer of any interest in any Security (including any transfers between or among depository participants or beneficial owners of interests in any Global Security) other than to require delivery of such certificates and other documentation or evidence as are expressly required by, and to do so if and when expressly required by the terms of, this Indenture, and to examine the same to determine substantial compliance as to form with the express requirements hereof.

Section 2.06 **Temporary Securities.**

Pending the preparation of definitive Securities of any series, the Company may execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, temporary Securities (printed, lithographed or typewritten) of any authorized denomination. Such temporary Securities shall be substantially in the form of the definitive Securities in lieu of which they are issued, but with such omissions, insertions and variations as may be appropriate for temporary Securities, all as may be determined by the Company. Every temporary Security of any series shall be executed by the Company and be authenticated by the Trustee upon the same conditions and in substantially the same manner, and with like effect, as the definitive Securities of such series. Without unnecessary delay the Company will execute and will furnish definitive Securities of such series and thereupon any or all temporary Securities of such series may be surrendered in exchange therefor (without charge to the holders), at the office or agency of the Company designated for the purpose, and the Trustee shall authenticate and such office or agency shall deliver in exchange for such temporary Securities an equal aggregate principal amount of definitive Securities of such series, unless the Company advises the Trustee to the effect that definitive Securities need not be executed and furnished until further notice from the Company. Until so exchanged, the temporary Securities of such series shall be entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture as definitive Securities of such series authenticated and delivered hereunder.

Section 2.07 **Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost or Stolen Securities.**

In case any temporary or definitive Security shall become mutilated or be destroyed, lost or stolen, the Company (subject to the next succeeding sentence) shall execute, and upon the Company's request the Trustee (subject as aforesaid) shall authenticate and deliver, a new Security of the same series, bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding, in exchange and substitution for the mutilated Security, or in lieu of and in substitution for the Security so destroyed, lost or stolen. In every case the applicant for a substituted Security shall furnish to the Company and the Trustee such security or indemnity as may be required by them to save each of them harmless, and, in every case of destruction, loss or theft, the applicant shall also furnish to the Company and the Trustee evidence to their satisfaction of the destruction, loss or theft of the applicant's Security and of the ownership thereof. The Trustee may authenticate any such substituted Security and deliver the same upon the written request or authorization of any officer of the Company. Upon the issuance of any substituted Security, the Company may require the payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto and any other expenses (including the fees and expenses of the Trustee) connected therewith.

In case any Security that has matured or is about to mature shall become mutilated or be destroyed, lost or stolen, the Company may, instead of issuing a substitute Security, pay or authorize the payment of the same (without surrender thereof except in the case of a mutilated Security) if the applicant for such payment shall furnish to the Company and the Trustee such security or indemnity as they may require to save them harmless, and, in case of destruction, loss or theft, evidence to the satisfaction of the Company and the Trustee of the destruction, loss or theft of such Security and of the ownership thereof.

Every replacement Security issued pursuant to the provisions of this Section shall constitute an additional contractual obligation of the Company whether or not the mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall be found at any time, or be enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to all the benefits of this Indenture equally and proportionately with any and all other Securities of the same series duly issued hereunder. All Securities shall be held and owned upon the express condition that the foregoing provisions are exclusive with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities, and shall preclude (to the extent lawful) any and all other rights or remedies, notwithstanding any law or statute existing or hereafter enacted to the contrary with respect to the replacement or payment of negotiable instruments or other securities without their surrender.

Section 2.08 **Cancellation.**

All Securities surrendered for the purpose of payment, redemption, repurchase, exchange, registration of transfer or conversion shall, if surrendered to the Company or any paying agent (or any other applicable agent), be delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, or, if surrendered to the Trustee, shall be cancelled by it, and no Securities shall be issued in lieu thereof except as expressly required or permitted by any of the provisions of this Indenture. On request of the Company at the time of such surrender, the Trustee shall deliver to the Company canceled Securities held by the Trustee. In the absence of such request the Trustee may dispose of canceled Securities in accordance with its standard procedures and deliver a certificate of disposition to the Company. If the Company shall otherwise acquire any of the Securities, however, such acquisition shall not operate as a redemption or satisfaction of the indebtedness represented by such Securities unless and until the same are delivered to the Trustee for cancellation.

Section 2.09 **Benefits of Indenture.**

Nothing in this Indenture or in the Securities, express or implied, shall give or be construed to give to any Person, other than the parties hereto and the holders of the Securities any legal or equitable right, remedy or claim under or in respect of this Indenture, or under any covenant, condition or provision herein contained; all such covenants, conditions and provisions being for the sole benefit of the parties hereto and of the holders of the Securities.

Section 2.10 **Authenticating Agent.**

So long as any of the Securities of any series remain Outstanding there may be an Authenticating Agent for any or all such series of Securities which the Trustee shall have the right to appoint. Said Authenticating Agent shall be authorized to act on behalf of the Trustee to authenticate Securities of such series issued upon exchange, transfer or partial redemption, repurchase or conversion thereof, and Securities so authenticated shall be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture and shall be valid and obligatory for all purposes as if authenticated by the Trustee hereunder. All references in this Indenture to the authentication of Securities by the Trustee shall be deemed to include authentication by an Authenticating Agent for such series. Each Authenticating Agent shall be acceptable to the Company and shall be a corporation that has a combined capital and surplus, as most recently reported or determined by it, sufficient under the laws of any jurisdiction under which it is organized or in which it is doing business to conduct a trust business, and that is otherwise authorized under such laws to conduct such business and is subject to supervision or examination by federal or state authorities. If at any time any Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with these provisions, it shall resign immediately.

Any Authenticating Agent may at any time resign by giving written notice of resignation to the Trustee and to the Company. The Trustee may at any time (and upon request by the Company shall) terminate the agency of any Authenticating Agent by giving written notice of termination to such Authenticating Agent and to the Company. Upon resignation, termination or cessation of eligibility of any Authenticating Agent, the Trustee may appoint an eligible successor Authenticating Agent acceptable to the Company. Any successor Authenticating Agent, upon acceptance of its appointment hereunder, shall become vested with all the rights, powers and duties of its predecessor hereunder as if originally named as an Authenticating Agent pursuant hereto.

Section 2.11 **Global Securities.**

(a) If the Company shall establish pursuant to Section 2.01 that the Securities of a particular series are to be issued as a Global Security, then the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall, in accordance with Section 2.04, authenticate and deliver, a Global Security that (i) shall represent, and shall be denominated in an amount equal to the aggregate principal amount of, all of the Outstanding Securities of such series, (ii) shall be registered in the name of the Depository or its nominee, (iii) shall be delivered by the Trustee to the Depository or pursuant to the Depository's instruction (or if the Depository names the Trustee as its custodian, retained by the Trustee), and (iv) shall bear a legend substantially to the following effect: "Except as otherwise provided in Section 2.11 of the Indenture, this Security may be transferred, in whole but not in part, only to another nominee of the Depository or to a successor Depository or to a nominee of such successor Depository."

(b) Notwithstanding the provisions of Section 2.05, the Global Security of a series may be transferred, in whole but not in part and in the manner provided in Section 2.05, only to another nominee of the Depository for such series, or to a successor Depository for such series selected or approved by the Company or to a nominee of such successor Depository.

(c) If at any time the Depository for a series of the Securities notifies the Company that it is unwilling or unable to continue as Depository for such series or if at any time the Depository for such series shall no longer be registered or in good standing under the Exchange Act, or other applicable statute or regulation, and a successor Depository for such series is not appointed by the Company within 90 days after the Company receives such notice or becomes aware of such condition, as the case may be, or if an Event of Default has occurred and is continuing and the Company has received a request from the Depository or from the Trustee, this Section 2.11 shall no longer be applicable to the Securities of such series and the Company will execute, and subject to Section 2.04, the Trustee will authenticate and deliver the Securities of such series in definitive registered form without coupons, in authorized denominations, and in an aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of the Global Security of such series in exchange for such Global Security. In addition, the Company may at any time determine that the Securities of any series shall no longer be represented by a Global Security and that the provisions of this Section 2.11 shall no longer apply to the Securities of such series. In such event the Company will execute and, subject to Section 2.04, the Trustee, upon receipt of an Officer's Certificate evidencing such determination by the Company, will authenticate and deliver the Securities of such series in definitive registered form without coupons, in authorized denominations, and in an aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of the Global

Security of such series in exchange for such Global Security. Upon the exchange of the Global Security for such Securities in definitive registered form without coupons, in authorized denominations, the Global Security shall be canceled by the Trustee. Such Securities in definitive registered form issued in exchange for the Global Security pursuant to this Section 2.11(c) shall be registered in such names and in such authorized denominations as the Depository, pursuant to instructions from its direct or indirect participants or otherwise, shall instruct the Trustee. The Trustee shall deliver such Securities to the Depository for delivery to the Persons in whose names such Securities are so registered.

Section 2.12 **CUSIP Numbers.**

The Company in issuing the Securities may use “CUSIP” numbers (if then generally in use), and, if so, the Trustee shall use “CUSIP” numbers in notices of redemption as a convenience to Holders; provided that any such notice may state that no representation is made as to the correctness of such numbers either as printed on the Securities or as contained in any notice of a redemption and that reliance may be placed only on the other elements of identification printed on the Securities, and any such redemption shall not be affected by any defect in or omission of such numbers. The Company will promptly notify the Trustee of any change in the “CUSIP” numbers.

ARTICLE 3

REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES AND SINKING FUND PROVISIONS

Section 3.01 **Redemption.**

The Company may redeem the Securities of any series issued hereunder on and after the dates and in accordance with the terms established for such series pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof.

Section 3.02 **Notice of Redemption.**

(a) In case the Company shall desire to exercise such right to redeem all or, as the case may be, a portion of the Securities of any series in accordance with any right the Company reserved for itself to do so pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof, the Company shall, or shall cause the Trustee to, give notice of such redemption to holders of the Securities of such series to be redeemed by mailing, first class postage prepaid (or with regard to any Global Security held in book entry form, by electronic mail), a notice of such redemption not less than 30 days and not more than 90 days before the date fixed for redemption of that series to such holders at their last addresses as they shall appear upon the Security Register, unless a shorter period is specified in the Securities to be redeemed. Any notice that is mailed in the manner herein provided shall be conclusively presumed to have been duly given, whether or not the registered holder receives the notice. In any case, failure duly to give such notice to the holder of any Security of any series designated for redemption in whole or in part, or any defect in the notice, shall not affect the validity of the proceedings for the redemption of any other Securities of such series or any other

series. In the case of any redemption of Securities prior to the expiration of any restriction on such redemption provided in the terms of such Securities or elsewhere in this Indenture, the Company shall furnish the Trustee with an Officer's Certificate evidencing compliance with any such restriction.

Each such notice of redemption shall identify the Securities to be redeemed (including CUSIP numbers, if any), specify the date fixed for redemption and the redemption price at which Securities of that series are to be redeemed, and shall state that payment of the redemption price of such Securities to be redeemed will be made at the office or agency of the Company, upon presentation and surrender of such Securities, that interest accrued to the date fixed for redemption will be paid as specified in said notice, that from and after said date interest will cease to accrue and that the redemption is from a sinking fund, if such is the case. If less than all the Securities of a series are to be redeemed, the notice to the holders of Securities of that series to be redeemed in part shall specify the particular Securities to be so redeemed.

In case any Security is to be redeemed in part only, the notice that relates to such Security shall state the portion of the principal amount thereof to be redeemed, and shall state that on and after the redemption date, upon surrender of such Security, a new Security or Securities of such series in principal amount equal to the unredeemed portion thereof will be issued.

(b) If less than all the Securities of a series are to be redeemed, the Company shall give the Trustee at least 45 days' notice (unless a shorter notice shall be satisfactory to the Trustee) in advance of the date fixed for redemption as to the aggregate principal amount of Securities of the series to be redeemed, and thereupon the Trustee shall select, by lot or in such other manner as it shall deem appropriate and fair in its discretion and that may provide for the selection of a portion or portions (equal to one thousand U.S. dollars (\$1,000) or any integral multiple thereof) of the principal amount of such Securities of a denomination larger than \$1,000, the Securities to be redeemed and shall thereafter promptly notify the Company in writing of the numbers of the Securities to be redeemed, in whole or in part. The Company may, if and whenever it shall so elect, by delivery of instructions signed on its behalf by an Officer, instruct the Trustee or any paying agent to call all or any part of the Securities of a particular series for redemption and to give notice of redemption in the manner set forth in this Section, such notice to be in the name of the Company or its own name as the Trustee or such paying agent may deem advisable. In any case in which notice of redemption is to be given by the Trustee or any such paying agent, the Company shall deliver or cause to be delivered to, or permit to remain with, the Trustee or such paying agent, as the case may be, such Security Register, transfer books or other records, or suitable copies or extracts therefrom, sufficient to enable the Trustee or such paying agent to give any notice by mail that may be required under the provisions of this Section.

Section 3.03 **Payment Upon Redemption.**

(a) If the giving of notice of redemption shall have been completed as above provided, the Securities or portions of Securities of the series to be redeemed specified in such notice shall become due and payable on the date and at the place stated in such notice at the applicable redemption price, together with interest accrued to the date fixed for redemption and interest on such Securities or portions of Securities shall cease to accrue on and after the date

fixed for redemption, unless the Company shall default in the payment of such redemption price and accrued interest with respect to any such Security or portion thereof. On presentation and surrender of such Securities on or after the date fixed for redemption at the place of payment specified in the notice, said Securities shall be paid and redeemed at the applicable redemption price for such series, together with interest accrued thereon to the date fixed for redemption (but if the date fixed for redemption is an Interest Payment Date, the interest installment payable on such date shall be payable to the registered holder at the close of business on the applicable record date pursuant to Section 2.03).

(b) Upon presentation of any Security of such series that is to be redeemed in part only, the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and the office or agency where the Security is presented shall deliver to the holder thereof, at the expense of the Company, a new Security of the same series of authorized denominations in principal amount equal to the unredeemed portion of the Security so presented.

Section 3.04 Sinking Fund.

The provisions of Sections 3.04, 3.05 and 3.06 shall be applicable to any sinking fund for the retirement of Securities of a series, except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 2.01 for Securities of such series.

The minimum amount of any sinking fund payment provided for by the terms of Securities of any series is herein referred to as a “mandatory sinking fund payment,” and any payment in excess of such minimum amount provided for by the terms of Securities of any series is herein referred to as an “optional sinking fund payment”. If provided for by the terms of Securities of any series, the cash amount of any sinking fund payment may be subject to reduction as provided in Section 3.05. Each sinking fund payment shall be applied to the redemption of Securities of any series as provided for by the terms of Securities of such series.

Section 3.05 Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities.

The Company (i) may deliver Outstanding Securities of a series and (ii) may apply as a credit Securities of a series that have been redeemed either at the election of the Company pursuant to the terms of such Securities or through the application of permitted optional sinking fund payments pursuant to the terms of such Securities, in each case in satisfaction of all or any part of any sinking fund payment with respect to the Securities of such series required to be made pursuant to the terms of such Securities as provided for by the terms of such series, provided that such Securities have not been previously so credited. Such Securities shall be received and credited for such purpose by the Trustee at the redemption price specified in such Securities for redemption through operation of the sinking fund and the amount of such sinking fund payment shall be reduced accordingly.

Section 3.06 Redemption of Securities for Sinking Fund.

Not less than 45 days prior to each sinking fund payment date for any series of Securities (unless a shorter period shall be satisfactory to the Trustee), the Company will deliver to the Trustee an Officer’s Certificate specifying the amount of the next ensuing sinking fund payment

for that series pursuant to the terms of the series, the portion thereof, if any, that is to be satisfied by delivering and crediting Securities of that series pursuant to Section 3.05 and the basis for such credit and will, together with such Officer's Certificate, deliver to the Trustee any Securities to be so delivered. Not less than 30 days before each such sinking fund payment date the Trustee shall select the Securities to be redeemed upon such sinking fund payment date in the manner specified in Section 3.02 and cause notice of the redemption thereof to be given in the name of and at the expense of the Company in the manner provided in Section 3.02. Such notice having been duly given, the redemption of such Securities shall be made upon the terms and in the manner stated in Section 3.03.

ARTICLE 4

COVENANTS

Section 4.01 Payment of Principal, Premium and Interest.

The Company will duly and punctually pay or cause to be paid the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on the Securities of that series at the time and place and in the manner provided herein and established with respect to such Securities. Payments of principal on the Securities may be made at the time provided herein and established with respect to such Securities by U.S. dollar check drawn on and mailed to the address of the Securityholder entitled thereto as such address shall appear in the Security Register, or U.S. dollar wire transfer to, a U.S. dollar account if such Securityholder shall have furnished wire instructions to the Trustee no later than 15 days prior to the relevant payment date. Payments of interest on the Securities may be made at the time provided herein and established with respect to such Securities by U.S. dollar check mailed to the address of the Securityholder entitled thereto as such address shall appear in the Security Register, or U.S. dollar wire transfer to, a U.S. dollar account if such Securityholder shall have furnished wire instructions in writing to the Security Registrar and the Trustee no later than 15 days prior to the relevant payment date.

Section 4.02 Maintenance of Office or Agency.

So long as any series of the Securities remain Outstanding, the Company agrees to maintain an office or agency with respect to each such series and at such other location or locations as may be designated as provided in this Section 4.02, where (i) Securities of that series may be presented for payment, (ii) Securities of that series may be presented as herein above authorized for registration of transfer and exchange, and (iii) notices and demands to or upon the Company in respect of the Securities of that series and this Indenture may be given or served, such designation to continue with respect to such office or agency until the Company shall, by written notice signed by any officer authorized to sign an Officer's Certificate and delivered to the Trustee, designate some other office or agency for such purposes or any of them. If at any time the Company shall fail to maintain any such required office or agency or shall fail to furnish the Trustee with the address thereof, such presentations, notices and demands may be made or served at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, and the Company hereby appoints the Trustee as its agent to receive all such presentations, notices and demands. The Company initially appoints the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee as its paying agent with respect to the Securities.

(a) If the Company shall appoint one or more paying agents for all or any series of the Securities, other than the Trustee, the Company will cause each such paying agent to execute and deliver to the Trustee an instrument in which such agent shall agree with the Trustee, subject to the provisions of this Section:

(1) that it will hold all sums held by it as such agent for the payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on the Securities of that series (whether such sums have been paid to it by the Company or by any other obligor of such Securities) in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto;

(2) that it will give the Trustee notice of any failure by the Company (or by any other obligor of such Securities) to make any payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on the Securities of that series when the same shall be due and payable;

(3) that it will, at any time during the continuance of any failure referred to in the preceding paragraph (a)(2) above, upon the written request of the Trustee, forthwith pay to the Trustee all sums so held in trust by such paying agent; and

(4) that it will perform all other duties of paying agent as set forth in this Indenture.

(b) If the Company shall act as its own paying agent with respect to any series of the Securities, it will on or before each due date of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on Securities of that series, set aside, segregate and hold in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto a sum sufficient to pay such principal (and premium, if any) or interest so becoming due on Securities of that series until such sums shall be paid to such Persons or otherwise disposed of as herein provided and will promptly notify the Trustee of such action, or any failure (by it or any other obligor on such Securities) to take such action. Whenever the Company shall have one or more paying agents for any series of Securities, it will, prior to each due date of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on any Securities of that series, deposit with the paying agent a sum sufficient to pay the principal (and premium, if any) or interest so becoming due, such sum to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such principal, premium or interest, and (unless such paying agent is the Trustee) the Company will promptly notify the Trustee of this action or failure so to act.

(c) Notwithstanding anything in this Section to the contrary, (i) the agreement to hold sums in trust as provided in this Section is subject to the provisions of Section 11.05, and (ii) the Company may at any time, for the purpose of obtaining the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture or for any other purpose, pay, or direct any paying agent to pay, to the Trustee all sums held in trust by the Company or such paying agent, such sums to be held by the Trustee upon the same terms and conditions as those upon which such sums were held by the Company or such paying agent; and, upon such payment by the Company or any paying agent to the Trustee, the Company or such paying agent shall be released from all further liability with respect to such money.

Section 4.04 Appointment to Fill Vacancy in Office of Trustee.

The Company, whenever necessary to avoid or fill a vacancy in the office of Trustee, will appoint, in the manner provided in Section 7.10, a Trustee, so that there shall at all times be a Trustee hereunder.

ARTICLE 5

SECURITYHOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY THE COMPANY AND THE TRUSTEE

Section 5.01 Company to Furnish Trustee Names and Addresses of Securityholders.

The Company will furnish or cause to be furnished to the Trustee (a) within 15 days after each regular record date (as defined in Section 2.03) a list, in such form as the Trustee may reasonably require, of the names and addresses of the holders of each series of Securities as of such regular record date, provided that the Company shall not be obligated to furnish or cause to furnish such list at any time that the list shall not differ in any respect from the most recent list furnished to the Trustee by the Company and (b) at such other times as the Trustee may request in writing within 30 days after the receipt by the Company of any such request, a list of similar form and content as of a date not more than 15 days prior to the time such list is furnished; provided, however, that, in either case, no such list need be furnished for any series for which the Trustee shall be the Security Registrar.

Section 5.02 Preservation Of Information; Communications With Securityholders.

(a) The Trustee shall preserve, in as current a form as is reasonably practicable, all information as to the names and addresses of the holders of Securities contained in the most recent list furnished to it as provided in Section 5.01 and as to the names and addresses of holders of Securities received by the Trustee in its capacity as Security Registrar (if acting in such capacity).

(b) The Trustee may destroy any list furnished to it as provided in Section 5.01 upon receipt of a new list so furnished.

(c) Securityholders may communicate as provided in Section 312(b) of the Trust Indenture Act with other Securityholders with respect to their rights under this Indenture or under the Securities, and, in connection with any such communications, the Trustee shall satisfy its obligations under Section 312(b) of the Trust Indenture Act in accordance with the provisions of Section 312(b) of the Trust Indenture Act.

Section 5.03 Reports by the Company.

(a) The Company will at all times comply with Section 314(a) of the Trust Indenture Act. The Company covenants and agrees to provide (which delivery may be via electronic mail) to the Trustee within 30 days, after the Company files the same with the Commission, copies of the annual reports and of the information, documents and other reports

(or copies of such portions of any of the foregoing as the Commission may from time to time by rules and regulations prescribe) that the Company is required to file with the Commission pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Exchange Act; provided, however, the Company shall not be required to deliver to the Trustee any correspondence filed with the Commission or any materials for which the Company has sought and received confidential treatment by the Commission; and provided further, that so long as such filings by the Company are available on the Commission's Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis and Retrieval System (EDGAR), or any successor system, such filings shall be deemed to have been filed with the Trustee for purposes hereof without any further action required by the Company. For the avoidance of doubt, a failure by the Company to file annual reports, information and other reports with the SEC within the time period prescribed thereof by the Commission shall not be deemed a breach of this Section 5.03.

(b) Delivery of reports, information and documents to the Trustee under Section 5.03 is for informational purposes only and the information and the Trustee's receipt of the foregoing shall not constitute constructive notice of any information contained therein, or determinable from information contained therein including the Company's compliance with any of their covenants thereunder (as to which the Trustee is entitled to rely exclusively on an Officer's Certificate). The Trustee is under no duty to examine any such reports, information or documents delivered to the Trustee or filed with the SEC via EDGAR to ensure compliance with the provision of this Indenture or to ascertain the correctness or otherwise of the information or the statements contained therein. The Trustee shall have no responsibility or duty whatsoever to ascertain or determine whether the above referenced filings with the SEC on EDGAR (or any successor system) has occurred.

Section 5.04 **Reports by the Trustee.**

(a) If required by Section 313(a) of the Trust Indenture Act, the Trustee, within sixty (60) days after each May 1, shall transmit by mail, first class postage prepaid, to the Securityholders, as their names and addresses appear upon the Security Register, a brief report dated as of such May 1, which complies with Section 313(a) of the Trust Indenture Act.

(b) The Trustee shall comply with Section 313(b) and 313(c) of the Trust Indenture Act.

(c) A copy of each such report shall, at the time of such transmission to Securityholders, be filed by the Trustee with the Company, with each securities exchange upon which any Securities are listed (if so listed) and also with the Commission. The Company agrees to notify the Trustee when any Securities become listed on any securities exchange.

ARTICLE 6

REMEDIES OF THE TRUSTEE AND SECURITYHOLDERS ON EVENT OF DEFAULT

Section 6.01 Events of Default.

(a) Whenever used herein with respect to Securities of a particular series, “Event of Default” means any one or more of the following events that has occurred and is continuing:

(1) the Company defaults in the payment of any installment of interest upon any of the Securities of that series, as and when the same shall become due and payable, and such default continues for a period of 90 days; provided, however, that a valid extension of an interest payment period by the Company in accordance with the terms of any indenture supplemental hereto shall not constitute a default in the payment of interest for this purpose;

(2) the Company defaults in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) any of the Securities of that series as and when the same shall become due and payable whether at maturity, upon redemption, by declaration or otherwise, or in any payment required by any sinking or analogous fund established with respect to that series; provided, however, that a valid extension of the maturity of such Securities in accordance with the terms of any indenture supplemental hereto shall not constitute a default in the payment of principal or premium, if any;

(3) the Company fails to observe or perform any other of its covenants or agreements with respect to that series contained in this Indenture or otherwise established with respect to that series of Securities pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof (other than a covenant or agreement that has been expressly included in this Indenture solely for the benefit of one or more series of Securities other than such series) for a period of 90 days after the date on which written notice of such failure, requiring the same to be remedied and stating that such notice is a “Notice of Default” hereunder, shall have been given to the Company by the Trustee, by registered or certified mail, or to the Company and the Trustee by the holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the Securities of that series at the time Outstanding;

(4) the Company pursuant to or within the meaning of any Bankruptcy Law (i) commences a voluntary case, (ii) consents to the entry of an order for relief against it in an involuntary case, (iii) consents to the appointment of a Custodian of it or for all or substantially all of its property or (iv) makes a general assignment for the benefit of its creditors; or

(5) a court of competent jurisdiction enters an order under any Bankruptcy Law that (i) is for relief against the Company in an involuntary case, (ii) appoints a Custodian of the Company for all or substantially all of its property or (iii) orders the liquidation of the Company, and the order or decree remains unstayed and in effect for 90 days.

(b) In each and every such case (other than an Event of Default specified in clause (4) or clause (5) above), unless the principal of all the Securities of that series shall have already become due and payable, either the Trustee or the holders of not less than 25% in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of that series then Outstanding hereunder, by notice in writing to the Company (and to the Trustee if given by such Securityholders), may declare the principal of (and premium, if any, on) and accrued and unpaid interest on all the Securities of that series to be due and payable immediately, and upon any such declaration the same shall become and shall be immediately due and payable. If an Event of Default specified in clause (4) or clause (5) above occurs, the principal of and accrued and unpaid interest on all the Securities of that series shall automatically be immediately due and payable without any declaration or other act on the part of the Trustee or the holders of the Securities.

(c) At any time after the principal of (and premium, if any, on) and accrued and unpaid interest on the Securities of that series shall have been so declared due and payable, and before any judgment or decree for the payment of the moneys due shall have been obtained or entered as hereinafter provided, the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of that series then Outstanding hereunder, by written notice to the Company and the Trustee, may rescind and annul such declaration and its consequences if: (i) the Company has paid or deposited with the Trustee a sum sufficient to pay all matured installments of interest upon all the Securities of that series and the principal of (and premium, if any, on) any and all Securities of that series that shall have become due otherwise than by acceleration (with interest upon such principal and premium, if any, and, to the extent that such payment is enforceable under applicable law, upon overdue installments of interest, at the rate per annum expressed in the Securities of that series to the date of such payment or deposit) and the amount payable to the Trustee under Section 7.06, and (ii) any and all Events of Default under the Indenture with respect to such series, other than the nonpayment of principal on (and premium, if any, on) and accrued and unpaid interest on Securities of that series that shall not have become due by their terms, shall have been remedied or waived as provided in Section 6.06.

No such rescission and annulment shall extend to or shall affect any subsequent default or impair any right consequent thereon.

(d) In case the Trustee shall have proceeded to enforce any right with respect to Securities of that series under this Indenture and such proceedings shall have been discontinued or abandoned because of such rescission or annulment or for any other reason or shall have been determined adversely to the Trustee, then and in every such case, subject to any determination in such proceedings, the Company and the Trustee shall be restored respectively to their former positions and rights hereunder, and all rights, remedies and powers of the Company and the Trustee shall continue as though no such proceedings had been taken.

Section 6.02 **Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee.**

(a) The Company covenants that (i) in case it shall default in the payment of any installment of interest on any of the Securities of a series, or in any payment required by any sinking or analogous fund established with respect to that series as and when the same shall have become due and payable, and such default shall have continued for a period of 90 days, or (ii) in case it shall default in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) any of the

Securities of a series when the same shall have become due and payable, whether upon maturity of the Securities of a series or upon redemption or upon declaration or otherwise then, upon demand of the Trustee, the Company will pay to the Trustee, for the benefit of the holders of the Securities of that series, the whole amount that then shall have been become due and payable on all such Securities for principal (and premium, if any) or interest, or both, as the case may be, with interest upon the overdue principal (and premium, if any) and (to the extent that payment of such interest is enforceable under applicable law) upon overdue installments of interest at the rate per annum expressed in the Securities of that series; and, in addition thereto, such further amount as shall be sufficient to cover the costs and expenses of collection, and the amount payable to the Trustee under Section 7.06.

(b) If the Company shall fail to pay such amounts forthwith upon such demand, the Trustee, in its own name and as trustee of an express trust, shall be entitled and empowered to institute any action or proceedings at law or in equity for the collection of the sums so due and unpaid, and may prosecute any such action or proceeding to judgment or final decree, and may enforce any such judgment or final decree against the Company or other obligor upon the Securities of that series and collect the moneys adjudged or decreed to be payable in the manner provided by law or equity out of the property of the Company or other obligor upon the Securities of that series, wherever situated.

(c) In case of any receivership, insolvency, liquidation, bankruptcy, reorganization, readjustment, arrangement, composition or judicial proceedings affecting the Company, or its creditors or property, the Trustee shall have power to intervene in such proceedings and take any action therein that may be permitted by the court and shall (except as may be otherwise provided by law) be entitled to file such proofs of claim and other papers and documents as may be necessary or advisable in order to have the claims of the Trustee and of the holders of Securities of such series allowed for the entire amount due and payable by the Company under the Indenture at the date of institution of such proceedings and for any additional amount that may become due and payable by the Company after such date, and to collect and receive any moneys or other property payable or deliverable on any such claim, and to distribute the same after the deduction of the amount payable to the Trustee under Section 7.06; and any receiver, assignee or trustee in bankruptcy or reorganization is hereby authorized by each of the holders of Securities of such series to make such payments to the Trustee, and, in the event that the Trustee shall consent to the making of such payments directly to such Securityholders, to pay to the Trustee any amount due it under Section 7.06.

(d) All rights of action and of asserting claims under this Indenture, or under any of the terms established with respect to Securities of that series, may be enforced by the Trustee without the possession of any of such Securities, or the production thereof at any trial or other proceeding relative thereto, and any such suit or proceeding instituted by the Trustee shall be brought in its own name as trustee of an express trust, and any recovery of judgment shall, after provision for payment to the Trustee of any amounts due under Section 7.06, be for the ratable benefit of the holders of the Securities of such series.

In case of an Event of Default hereunder, the Trustee may in its discretion proceed to protect and enforce the rights vested in it by this Indenture by such appropriate judicial proceedings as the Trustee shall deem most effectual to protect and enforce any of such rights,

either at law or in equity or in bankruptcy or otherwise, whether for the specific enforcement of any covenant or agreement contained in the Indenture or in aid of the exercise of any power granted in this Indenture, or to enforce any other legal or equitable right vested in the Trustee by this Indenture or by law.

Nothing contained herein shall be deemed to authorize the Trustee to authorize or consent to or accept or adopt on behalf of any Securityholder any plan of reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition affecting the Securities of that series or the rights of any holder thereof or to authorize the Trustee to vote in respect of the claim of any Securityholder in any such proceeding.

Section 6.03 **Application of Moneys Collected.**

Any moneys collected by the Trustee pursuant to this Article with respect to a particular series of Securities shall be applied in the following order, at the date or dates fixed by the Trustee and, in case of the distribution of such moneys on account of principal (or premium, if any) or interest, upon presentation of the Securities of that series, and notation thereon of the payment, if only partially paid, and upon surrender thereof if fully paid:

FIRST: To the payment of costs and expenses of collection and of all amounts payable to the Trustee under Section 7.06;

SECOND: To the payment of the amounts then due and unpaid upon Securities of such series for principal (and premium, if any) and interest, in respect of which or for the benefit of which such money has been collected, ratably, without preference or priority of any kind, according to the amounts due and payable on such Securities for principal (and premium, if any) and interest, respectively; and

THIRD: To the payment of the remainder, if any, to the Company or any other Person lawfully entitled thereto.

Section 6.04 **Limitation on Suits.**

No holder of any Security of any series shall have any right by virtue or by availing of any provision of this Indenture to institute any suit, action or proceeding in equity or at law upon or under or with respect to this Indenture or for the appointment of a receiver or trustee, or for any other remedy hereunder, unless (i) such holder previously shall have given to the Trustee written notice of an Event of Default and of the continuance thereof with respect to the Securities of such series specifying such Event of Default, as hereinbefore provided; (ii) the holders of not less than 25% in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of such series then Outstanding shall have made written request upon the Trustee to institute such action, suit or proceeding in its own name as Trustee hereunder; (iii) such holder or holders shall have offered to the Trustee indemnity satisfactory to it against the costs, expenses and liabilities to be incurred in compliance with such request; (iv) the Trustee for 90 days after its receipt of such notice, request and offer of indemnity, shall have failed to institute any such action, suit or proceeding and (v) during such 90 day period, the holders of a majority in principal amount of the Securities of that series do not give the Trustee a direction inconsistent with the request.

Notwithstanding anything contained herein to the contrary or any other provisions of this Indenture, the right of any holder of any Security to receive payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on such Security, as therein provided, on or after the respective due dates expressed in such Security (or in the case of redemption, on the redemption date), or to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment on or after such respective dates or redemption date, shall not be impaired or affected without the consent of such holder and by accepting a Security hereunder it is expressly understood, intended and covenanted by the taker and holder of every Security of such series with every other such taker and holder and the Trustee, that no one or more holders of Securities of such series shall have any right in any manner whatsoever by virtue or by availing of any provision of this Indenture to affect, disturb or prejudice the rights of the holders of any other of such Securities, or to obtain or seek to obtain priority over or preference to any other such holder, or to enforce any right under this Indenture, except in the manner herein provided and for the equal, ratable and common benefit of all holders of Securities of such series. For the protection and enforcement of the provisions of this Section, each and every Securityholder and the Trustee shall be entitled to such relief as can be given either at law or in equity.

Section 6.05 **Rights and Remedies Cumulative; Delay or Omission Not Waiver.**

(a) Except as otherwise provided in Section 2.07, all powers and remedies given by this Article to the Trustee or to the Securityholders shall, to the extent permitted by law, be deemed cumulative and not exclusive of any other powers and remedies available to the Trustee or the holders of the Securities, by judicial proceedings or otherwise, to enforce the performance or observance of the covenants and agreements contained in this Indenture or otherwise established with respect to such Securities.

(b) No delay or omission of the Trustee or of any holder of any of the Securities to exercise any right or power accruing upon any Event of Default occurring and continuing as aforesaid shall impair any such right or power, or shall be construed to be a waiver of any such default or an acquiescence therein; and, subject to the provisions of Section 6.04, every power and remedy given by this Article or by law to the Trustee or the Securityholders may be exercised from time to time, and as often as shall be deemed expedient, by the Trustee or by the Securityholders.

Section 6.06 **Control by Securityholders.**

The holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of any series at the time Outstanding, determined in accordance with Section 8.04, shall have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred on the Trustee with respect to such series; provided, however, that such direction shall not be in conflict with any rule of law or with this Indenture or subject the Trustee in its sole discretion to personal liability. Subject to the provisions of Section 7.01, the Trustee shall have the right to decline to follow any such direction if the Trustee in good faith shall, by a Responsible Officer or officers of the Trustee, determine that the proceeding so directed, subject to the Trustee's duties under the Trust Indenture Act, would involve the Trustee in personal liability or might be unduly prejudicial to the Securityholders not involved in the proceeding. The holders of a majority in aggregate principal

amount of the Securities of any series at the time Outstanding affected thereby, determined in accordance with Section 8.04, may on behalf of the holders of all of the Securities of such series waive any past default in the performance of any of the covenants contained herein or established pursuant to Section 2.01 with respect to such series and its consequences, except a default in the payment of the principal of, or premium, if any, or interest on, any of the Securities of that series as and when the same shall become due by the terms of such Securities otherwise than by acceleration (unless such default has been cured and a sum sufficient to pay all matured installments of interest and principal and any premium has been deposited with the Trustee (in accordance with Section 6.01(c)). Upon any such waiver, the default covered thereby shall be deemed to be cured for all purposes of this Indenture and the Company, the Trustee and the holders of the Securities of such series shall be restored to their former positions and rights hereunder, respectively; but no such waiver shall extend to any subsequent or other default or impair any right consequent thereon.

Section 6.07 Undertaking to Pay Costs.

All parties to this Indenture agree, and each holder of any Securities by such holder's acceptance thereof shall be deemed to have agreed, that any court may in its discretion require, in any suit for the enforcement of any right or remedy under this Indenture, or in any suit against the Trustee for any action taken or omitted by it as Trustee, the filing by any party litigant in such suit of an undertaking to pay the costs of such suit, and that such court may in its discretion assess reasonable costs, including reasonable attorneys' fees and expenses, against any party litigant in such suit, having due regard to the merits and good faith of the claims or defenses made by such party litigant; but the provisions of this Section shall not apply to any suit instituted by the Trustee, to any suit instituted by any Securityholder, or group of Securityholders, holding more than 10% in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series, or to any suit instituted by any Securityholder for the enforcement of the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on any Security of such series, on or after the respective due dates expressed in such Security or established pursuant to this Indenture.

ARTICLE 7

CONCERNING THE TRUSTEE

Section 7.01 Certain Duties and Responsibilities of Trustee.

(a) The Trustee, prior to the occurrence of an Event of Default with respect to the Securities of a series and after the curing of all Events of Default with respect to the Securities of that series that may have occurred, shall undertake to perform with respect to the Securities of such series such duties and only such duties as are specifically set forth in this Indenture, and no implied covenants shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustee. In case an Event of Default with respect to the Securities of a series has occurred (that has not been cured or waived), the Trustee shall exercise with respect to Securities of that series such of the rights and powers vested in it by this Indenture, and use the same degree of care and skill in their exercise, as a prudent person would exercise or use under the circumstances in the conduct of his or her own affairs.

(b) No provision of this Indenture shall be construed to relieve the Trustee from liability for its own negligent action, its own negligent failure to act, or its own willful misconduct, except that:

(i) prior to the occurrence of an Event of Default with respect to the Securities of a series and after the curing or waiving of all such Events of Default with respect to that series that may have occurred:

(A) the duties and obligations of the Trustee shall with respect to the Securities of such series be determined solely by the express provisions of this Indenture, and the Trustee shall not be liable with respect to the Securities of such series except for the performance of such duties and obligations as are specifically set forth in this Indenture, and no implied covenants or obligations shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustee; and

(B) in the absence of bad faith on the part of the Trustee, the Trustee may with respect to the Securities of such series conclusively rely, as to the truth of the statements and the correctness of the opinions expressed therein, upon any certificates or opinions furnished to the Trustee and conforming to the requirements of this Indenture; but in the case of any such certificates or opinions that by any provision hereof are specifically required to be furnished to the Trustee, the Trustee shall be under a duty to examine the same to determine whether or not they conform to the requirements of this Indenture;

(ii) the Trustee shall not be liable to any Securityholder or to any other Person for any error of judgment made in good faith by a Responsible Officer or Responsible Officers of the Trustee, unless it shall be proved that the Trustee was negligent in ascertaining the pertinent facts;

(iii) the Trustee shall not be liable with respect to any action taken or omitted to be taken by it in good faith in accordance with the direction of the holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Securities of any series at the time Outstanding relating to the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred upon the Trustee under this Indenture with respect to the Securities of that series;

(iv) none of the provisions contained in this Indenture shall require the Trustee to expend or risk its own funds or otherwise incur personal financial liability in the performance of any of its duties or in the exercise of any of its rights or powers if there is reasonable ground for believing that the repayment of such funds or liability is not reasonably assured to it under the terms of this Indenture or adequate indemnity against such risk is not reasonably assured to it;

(v) The Trustee shall not be required to give any bond or surety in respect of the performance of its powers or duties hereunder;

(vi) The permissive right of the Trustee to do things enumerated in this Indenture shall not be construed as a duty of the Trustee; and

(vii) No Trustee shall have any duty or responsibility for any act or omission of any other Trustee appointed with respect to a series of Securities hereunder.

Section 7.02 **Certain Rights of Trustee.**

Except as otherwise provided in Section 7.01:

(a) The Trustee may conclusively rely and shall be protected in acting or refraining from acting upon any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, consent, order, approval, bond, security or other paper or document believed by it to be genuine and to have been signed or presented by the proper party or parties;

(b) Any request, direction, order or demand of the Company mentioned herein shall be sufficiently evidenced by a Board Resolution or an instrument signed in the name of the Company by any authorized officer of the Company (unless other evidence in respect thereof is specifically prescribed herein);

(c) The Trustee may consult with counsel and the opinion or written advice of such counsel or, if requested, any Opinion of Counsel shall be full and complete authorization and protection in respect of any action taken or suffered or omitted hereunder in good faith and in reliance thereon;

(d) The Trustee shall be under no obligation to exercise any of the rights or powers vested in it by this Indenture at the request, order or direction of any of the Securityholders pursuant to the provisions of this Indenture, unless such Securityholders shall have offered to the Trustee security or indemnity reasonably acceptable to the Trustee against the costs, expenses and liabilities that may be incurred therein or thereby; nothing contained herein shall, however, relieve the Trustee of the obligation, upon the occurrence of an Event of Default with respect to a series of the Securities (that has not been cured or waived), to exercise with respect to Securities of that series such of the rights and powers vested in it by this Indenture, and to use the same degree of care and skill in their exercise, as a prudent person would exercise or use under the circumstances in the conduct of his or her own affairs;

(e) The Trustee shall not be liable for any action taken or omitted to be taken by it in good faith and believed by it to be authorized or within the discretion or rights or powers conferred upon it by this Indenture;

(f) The Trustee shall not be bound to make any investigation into the facts or matters stated in any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, consent, order, approval, bond, security, or other papers or documents or inquire as to the performance by the Company of one of its covenants under this Indenture, unless requested in writing so to do by the holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of the particular series affected thereby (determined as provided in Section 8.04); provided, however, that if the payment within a reasonable time to the Trustee of the costs, expenses or liabilities likely to be incurred by it in the making of such investigation is, in the opinion of the Trustee, not reasonably assured to the Trustee by the security afforded to it by the terms of this Indenture, the Trustee may require security or indemnity reasonably

acceptable to the Trustee against such costs, expenses or liabilities as a condition to so proceeding. The reasonable expense of every such examination shall be paid by the Company or, if paid by the Trustee, shall be repaid by the Company upon demand;

(g) The Trustee may execute any of the trusts or powers hereunder or perform any duties hereunder either directly or by or through agents or attorneys and the Trustee shall not be responsible for any misconduct or negligence on the part of any agent or attorney appointed with due care by it hereunder;

(h) In no event shall the Trustee be responsible or liable for any failure or delay in the performance of its obligations hereunder arising out of or caused by, directly or indirectly, forces beyond its control, including, without limitation, strikes, work stoppages, accidents, acts of war or terrorism, civil or military disturbances, nuclear or natural catastrophes or acts of God, and interruptions, loss or malfunctions of utilities, communications or computer (software and hardware) services; it being understood that the Trustee shall use reasonable efforts which are consistent with accepted practices in the banking industry to resume performance as soon as practicable under the circumstances;

(i) In no event shall the Trustee be responsible or liable for special, indirect, punitive or consequential loss or damage of any kind whatsoever (including, but not limited to, loss of profit) irrespective of whether the Trustee has been advised of the likelihood of such loss or damage and regardless of the form of action; and

(j) The Trustee agrees to accept and act upon instructions or directions pursuant to this Indenture sent by unsecured e-mail, facsimile transmission or other similar unsecured electronic methods; provided, however, that (a) the party providing such written instructions, subsequent to such transmission of written instructions, shall provide the originally executed instructions or directions to the Trustee in a timely manner, and (b) such originally executed instructions or directions shall be signed by an authorized representative of the party providing such instructions or directions. If the party elects to give the Trustee e-mail or facsimile instructions (or instructions by a similar electronic method) and the Trustee in its discretion elects to act upon such instructions, the Trustee's understanding of such instructions shall be deemed controlling. The Trustee shall not be liable for any losses, costs or expenses arising directly or indirectly from the Trustee's reliance upon and compliance with such instructions notwithstanding such instructions conflict or are inconsistent with a subsequent written instruction. The party providing electronic instructions agrees to assume all risks arising out of the use of such electronic methods to submit instructions and directions to the Trustee, including without limitation the risk of the Trustee acting on unauthorized instructions, and the risk of interception and misuse by third parties. The Trustee may request that the Company deliver an Officer's Certificate setting forth the names of individuals and/or titles of officers authorized at such time to furnish the Trustee with Officer's Certificates, Company Orders and any other matters or directions pursuant to this Indenture.

(k) The rights, privileges, protections, immunities and benefits given to the Trustee, including, without limitation, its right to be indemnified, are extended to, and shall be enforceable by, the Trustee in each of its capacities hereunder.

(l) The Trustee shall not be deemed to have knowledge of any Default or Event of Default (other than an Event of Default relating to the failure to pay the interest on, or the principal of, the Securities) until the Trustee shall have received written notification in the manner set forth in this Indenture or a Responsible Officer of the Trustee shall have obtained actual knowledge.

Section 7.03 **Trustee Not Responsible for Recitals or Issuance of Securities.**

(a) The recitals contained herein and in the Securities shall be taken as the statements of the Company, and the Trustee assumes no responsibility for the correctness of the same. The Trustee shall not be responsible for any statement in any registration statement, prospectus, or any other document in connection with the sale of Securities. The Trustee shall not be responsible for any rating on the Securities or any action or omission of any rating agency.

(b) The Trustee makes no representations as to the validity or sufficiency of this Indenture or of the Securities.

(c) The Trustee shall not be accountable for the use or application by the Company of any of the Securities or of the proceeds of such Securities, or for the use or application of any moneys paid over by the Trustee in accordance with any provision of this Indenture or established pursuant to Section 2.01, or for the use or application of any moneys received by any paying agent other than the Trustee.

Section 7.04 **May Hold Securities.**

The Trustee or any paying agent or Security Registrar, in its individual or any other capacity, may become the owner or pledgee of Securities with the same rights it would have if it were not Trustee, paying agent or Security Registrar.

Section 7.05 **Moneys Held in Trust.**

Subject to the provisions of Section 11.05, all moneys received by the Trustee shall, until used or applied as herein provided, be held in trust for the purposes for which they were received, but need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law. The Trustee shall be under no liability for interest on any moneys received by it hereunder except such as it may agree with the Company to pay thereon.

Section 7.06 **Compensation and Reimbursement.**

(a) The Company shall pay to the Trustee for each of its capacities hereunder from time to time compensation for its services as the Company and the Trustee shall from time to time agree upon in writing. The Trustee's compensation shall not be limited by any law on compensation of a trustee of an express trust. The Company shall reimburse the Trustee upon request for all reasonable out-of-pocket expenses incurred by it. Such expenses shall include the reasonable compensation and expenses of the Trustee's agents and counsel.

(b) The Company shall indemnify each of the Trustee in each of its capacities hereunder against any loss, liability or expense (including the cost of defending itself and including the reasonable compensation and expenses of the Trustee's agents and counsel) incurred by it except as set forth in Section 7.06(c) in the exercise or performance of its powers, rights or duties under this Indenture as Trustee or Agent. The Trustee shall notify the Company promptly of any claim for which it may seek indemnity. The Company shall defend the claim and the Trustee shall cooperate in the defense. The Trustee may have one separate counsel and the Company shall pay the reasonable fees and expenses of such counsel. The Company need not pay for any settlement made without its consent, which consent shall not be unreasonably withheld. This indemnification shall apply to officers, directors, employees, shareholders and agents of the Trustee.

(c) The Company need not reimburse any expense or indemnify against any loss or liability incurred by the Trustee or by any officer, director, employee, shareholder or agent of the Trustee through negligence or bad faith.

(d) To ensure the Company's payment obligations in this Section, the Trustee shall have a lien prior to the Securities on all funds or property held or collected by the Trustee, except that held in trust to pay principal of or interest on particular Securities. When the Trustee incurs expenses or renders services in connection with an Event of Default specified in Section 6.01(4) or (5), the expenses (including the reasonable fees and expenses of its counsel) and the compensation for services in connection therewith are to constitute expenses of administration under any bankruptcy law. The provisions of this Section 7.06 shall survive the termination of this Indenture and the resignation or removal of the Trustee.

Section 7.07 **Reliance on Officer's Certificate.**

Except as otherwise provided in Section 7.01, whenever in the administration of the provisions of this Indenture the Trustee shall deem it reasonably necessary or desirable that a matter be proved or established prior to taking or suffering or omitting to take any action hereunder, such matter (unless other evidence in respect thereof be herein specifically prescribed) may, in the absence of negligence or bad faith on the part of the Trustee, be deemed to be conclusively proved and established by an Officer's Certificate delivered to the Trustee and such certificate, in the absence of negligence or bad faith on the part of the Trustee, shall be full warrant to the Trustee for any action taken, suffered or omitted to be taken by it under the provisions of this Indenture upon the faith thereof.

Section 7.08 **Disqualification; Conflicting Interests.**

If the Trustee has or shall acquire any "conflicting interest" within the meaning of Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act, the Trustee and the Company shall in all respects comply with the provisions of Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act.

Section 7.09 Corporate Trustee Required; Eligibility.

There shall at all times be a Trustee with respect to the Securities issued hereunder which shall at all times be a corporation organized and doing business under the laws of the United States of America or any state or territory thereof or of the District of Columbia, or a corporation or other Person permitted to act as trustee by the Commission, authorized under such laws to exercise corporate trust powers, having a combined capital and surplus of at least fifty million U.S. dollars (\$50,000,000), and subject to supervision or examination by federal, state, territorial, or District of Columbia authority.

If such corporation or other Person publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or to the requirements of the aforesaid supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section, the combined capital and surplus of such corporation or other Person shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. The Company may not, nor may any Person directly or indirectly controlling, controlled by, or under common control with the Company, serve as Trustee. In case at any time the Trustee shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, the Trustee shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect specified in Section 7.10.

Section 7.10 Resignation and Removal; Appointment of Successor.

(a) The Trustee or any successor hereafter appointed may at any time resign with respect to the Securities of one or more series by giving written notice thereof to the Company and by transmitting notice of resignation by mail, first class postage prepaid, to the Securityholders of such series, as their names and addresses appear upon the Security Register. Upon receiving such notice of resignation, the Company shall promptly appoint a successor trustee with respect to Securities of such series by written instrument, in duplicate, executed by order of the Board of Directors, one copy of which instrument shall be delivered to the resigning Trustee and one copy to the successor trustee. If no successor trustee shall have been so appointed and have accepted appointment within 30 days after the mailing of such notice of resignation, the resigning Trustee may petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor trustee with respect to Securities of such series, or any Securityholder of that series who has been a bona fide holder of a Security or Securities for at least six months may on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any such court for the appointment of a successor trustee. Such court may thereupon after such notice, if any, as it may deem proper and prescribe, appoint a successor trustee.

(b) In case at any time any one of the following shall occur:

(i) the Trustee shall fail to comply with the provisions of Section 7.08 after written request therefor by the Company or by any Securityholder who has been a bona fide holder of a Security or Securities for at least six months; or

(ii) the Trustee shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of Section 7.09 and shall fail to resign after written request therefor by the Company or by any such Securityholder; or

(iii) the Trustee shall become incapable of acting, or shall be adjudged a bankrupt or insolvent, or commence a voluntary bankruptcy proceeding, or a receiver of the Trustee or of its property shall be appointed or consented to, or any public officer shall take charge or control of the Trustee or of its property or affairs for the purpose of rehabilitation, conservation or liquidation;

then, in any such case, the Company may remove the Trustee with respect to all Securities and appoint a successor trustee by written instrument, in duplicate, executed by order of the Board of Directors, one copy of which instrument shall be delivered to the Trustee so removed and one copy to the successor trustee, or any Securityholder who has been a bona fide holder of a Security or Securities for at least six months may, on behalf of that holder and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the removal of the Trustee and the appointment of a successor trustee. Such court may thereupon after such notice, if any, as it may deem proper and prescribe, remove the Trustee and appoint a successor trustee.

(c) The holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of any series at the time Outstanding may at any time remove the Trustee with respect to such series by so notifying the Trustee and the Company and may appoint a successor Trustee for such series with the consent of the Company.

(d) Any resignation or removal of the Trustee and appointment of a successor trustee with respect to the Securities of a series pursuant to any of the provisions of this Section shall become effective upon acceptance of appointment by the successor trustee as provided in Section 7.11.

(e) Any successor trustee appointed pursuant to this Section may be appointed with respect to the Securities of one or more series or all of such series, and at any time there shall be only one Trustee with respect to the Securities of any particular series.

Section 7.11 **Acceptance of Appointment By Successor.**

(a) In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor trustee with respect to all Securities, every such successor trustee so appointed shall execute, acknowledge and deliver to the Company and to the retiring Trustee an instrument accepting such appointment, and thereupon the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective and such successor trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee; but, on the request of the Company or the successor trustee, such retiring Trustee shall, upon payment of its charges, execute and deliver an instrument transferring to such successor trustee all the rights, powers, and trusts of the retiring Trustee and shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor trustee all property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder.

(b) In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more (but not all) series, the Company, the retiring Trustee and each successor trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more series shall execute and deliver an indenture supplemental hereto wherein each successor trustee shall accept such appointment and which (i) shall contain such provisions as shall be necessary or desirable to transfer and confirm

to, and to vest in, each successor trustee all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor trustee relates, (ii) shall contain such provisions as shall be deemed necessary or desirable to confirm that all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series as to which the retiring Trustee is not retiring shall continue to be vested in the retiring Trustee, and (iii) shall add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, it being understood that nothing herein or in such supplemental indenture shall constitute such Trustees co-trustees of the same trust, that each such Trustee shall be trustee of a trust or trusts hereunder separate and apart from any trust or trusts hereunder administered by any other such Trustee and that no Trustee shall be responsible for any act or failure to act on the part of any other Trustee hereunder; and upon the execution and delivery of such supplemental indenture the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective to the extent provided therein, such retiring Trustee shall with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor trustee relates have no further responsibility for the exercise of rights and powers or for the performance of the duties and obligations vested in the Trustee under this Indenture, and each such successor trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor trustee relates; but, on request of the Company or any successor trustee, such retiring Trustee shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor trustee, to the extent contemplated by such supplemental indenture, the property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor trustee relates.

(c) Upon request of any such successor trustee, the Company shall execute any and all instruments for more fully and certainly vesting in and confirming to such successor trustee all such rights, powers and trusts referred to in paragraph (a) or (b) of this Section, as the case may be.

(d) No successor trustee shall accept its appointment unless at the time of such acceptance such successor trustee shall be qualified and eligible under this Article.

(e) Upon acceptance of appointment by a successor trustee as provided in this Section, the Company shall transmit notice of the succession of such trustee hereunder by mail, first class postage prepaid, to the Securityholders, as their names and addresses appear upon the Security Register. If the Company fails to transmit such notice within ten days after acceptance of appointment by the successor trustee, the successor trustee shall cause such notice to be transmitted at the expense of the Company.

Section 7.12 [Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business.](#)

Any corporation into which the Trustee may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which the Trustee shall be a party, or any corporation succeeding to all or substantially all the corporate trust business of the Trustee, including the administration of the trust created by this Indenture, shall be the successor of the Trustee hereunder, provided that such corporation shall

be qualified under the provisions of Section 7.08 and eligible under the provisions of Section 7.09, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of any of the parties hereto, anything herein to the contrary notwithstanding. In case any Securities shall have been authenticated, but not delivered, by the Trustee then in office, any successor by merger, conversion or consolidation to such authenticating Trustee may adopt such authentication and deliver the Securities so authenticated with the same effect as if such successor Trustee had itself authenticated such Securities.

Section 7.13 **Preferential Collection of Claims Against the Company.**

The Trustee shall comply with Section 311(a) of the Trust Indenture Act, excluding any creditor relationship described in Section 311(b) of the Trust Indenture Act. A Trustee who has resigned or been removed shall be subject to Section 311(a) of the Trust Indenture Act to the extent included therein.

Section 7.14 **Notice of Default.**

If any Event of Default occurs and is continuing and if such Event of Default is known to a Responsible Officer of the Trustee, the Trustee shall mail to each Securityholder in the manner and to the extent provided in Section 313(c) of the Trust Indenture Act notice of the Event of Default within the earlier of 90 days after it occurs and 30 days after it is known to a Responsible Officer of the Trustee or written notice of it is received by the Trustee, unless such Event of Default has been cured; *provided, however*, that, except in the case of a default in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on any Security, the Trustee shall be protected in withholding such notice if and so long as the Responsible Officers of the Trustee in good faith determine that the withholding of such notice is in the interest of the Securityholders.

ARTICLE 8

CONCERNING THE SECURITYHOLDERS

Section 8.01 **Evidence of Action by Securityholders.**

Whenever in this Indenture it is provided that the holders of a majority or specified percentage in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of a particular series may take any action (including the making of any demand or request, the giving of any notice, consent or waiver or the taking of any other action), the fact that at the time of taking any such action the holders of such majority or specified percentage of that series have joined therein may be evidenced by any instrument or any number of instruments of similar tenor executed by such holders of Securities of that series in person or by agent or proxy appointed in writing.

If the Company shall solicit from the Securityholders of any series any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action, the Company may, at its option, as evidenced by an Officer's Certificate, fix in advance a record date for such series for the determination of Securityholders entitled to give such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action, but the Company shall have no obligation to do so. If such a record date is fixed, such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent,

waiver or other action may be given before or after the record date, but only the Securityholders of record at the close of business on the record date shall be deemed to be Securityholders for the purposes of determining whether Securityholders of the requisite proportion of Outstanding Securities of that series have authorized or agreed or consented to such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action, and for that purpose the Outstanding Securities of that series shall be computed as of the record date; provided, however, that no such authorization, agreement or consent by such Securityholders on the record date shall be deemed effective unless it shall become effective pursuant to the provisions of this Indenture not later than six months after the record date.

Section 8.02 **Proof of Execution by Securityholders.**

Subject to the provisions of Section 7.01, proof of the execution of any instrument by a Securityholder (such proof will not require notarization) or his or her agent or proxy and proof of the holding by any Person of any of the Securities shall be sufficient if made in the following manner:

(a) The fact and date of the execution by any such Person of any instrument may be proved in any reasonable manner acceptable to the Trustee.

(b) The ownership of Securities shall be proved by the Security Register of such Securities or by a certificate of the Security Registrar thereof.

The Trustee may require such additional proof of any matter referred to in this Section as it shall deem necessary.

Section 8.03 **Who May be Deemed Owners.**

Prior to the due presentment for registration of transfer of any Security, the Company, the Trustee, any paying agent and any Security Registrar may deem and treat the Person in whose name such Security shall be registered upon the books of the Security Registrar as the absolute owner of such Security (whether or not such Security shall be overdue and notwithstanding any notice of ownership or writing thereon made by anyone other than the Security Registrar) for the purpose of receiving payment of or on account of the principal of, premium, if any, and (subject to Section 2.03) interest on such Security and for all other purposes; and neither the Company nor the Trustee nor any paying agent nor any Security Registrar shall be affected by any notice to the contrary.

Section 8.04 **Certain Securities Owned by Company Disregarded.**

In determining whether the holders of the requisite aggregate principal amount of Securities of a particular series have concurred in any direction, consent or waiver under this Indenture, the Securities of that series that are owned by the Company or any other obligor on the Securities of that series or by any Person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under common control with the Company or any other obligor on the Securities of that series shall be disregarded and deemed not to be Outstanding for the purpose of any such determination, except that for the purpose of determining whether the Trustee shall be protected in relying on any such direction, consent or waiver, only Securities of such series that the Trustee

actually knows are so owned shall be so disregarded. The Securities so owned that have been pledged in good faith may be regarded as Outstanding for the purposes of this Section, if the pledgee shall establish to the satisfaction of the Trustee the pledgee's right so to act with respect to such Securities and that the pledgee is not a Person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with the Company or any such other obligor. In case of a dispute as to such right, any decision by the Trustee taken upon the advice of counsel shall be full protection to the Trustee.

Section 8.05 Actions Binding on Future Securityholders.

At any time prior to (but not after) the evidencing to the Trustee, as provided in Section 8.01, of the taking of any action by the holders of the majority or percentage in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of a particular series specified in this Indenture in connection with such action, any holder of a Security of that series that is shown by the evidence to be included in the Securities the holders of which have consented to such action may, by filing written notice with the Trustee, and upon proof of holding as provided in Section 8.02, revoke such action so far as concerns such Security. Except as aforesaid any such action taken by the holder of any Security shall be conclusive and binding upon such holder and upon all future holders and owners of such Security, and of any Security issued in exchange therefor, on registration of transfer thereof or in place thereof, irrespective of whether or not any notation in regard thereto is made upon such Security. Any action taken by the holders of the majority or percentage in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of a particular series specified in this Indenture in connection with such action shall be conclusively binding upon the Company, the Trustee and the holders of all the Securities of that series.

ARTICLE 9

SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES

Section 9.01 Supplemental Indentures Without the Consent of Securityholders.

In addition to any supplemental indenture otherwise authorized by this Indenture, the Company and the Trustee may from time to time and at any time enter into an indenture or indentures supplemental hereto (which shall conform to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act as then in effect), without the consent of the Securityholders, for one or more of the following purposes:

- (a) to cure any ambiguity, defect, or inconsistency herein or in the Securities of any series;
- (b) to comply with Article Ten;
- (c) to provide for uncertificated Securities in addition to or in place of certificated Securities;

(d) to add to the covenants, restrictions, conditions or provisions relating to the Company for the benefit of the holders of all or any series of Securities (and if such covenants, restrictions, conditions or provisions are to be for the benefit of less than all series of

Securities, stating that such covenants, restrictions, conditions or provisions are expressly being included solely for the benefit of such series), to make the occurrence, or the occurrence and the continuance, of a default in any such additional covenants, restrictions, conditions or provisions an Event of Default, or to surrender any right or power herein conferred upon the Company;

(e) to add to, delete from, or revise the conditions, limitations, and restrictions on the authorized amount, terms, or purposes of issue, authentication, and delivery of Securities, as herein set forth;

(f) to make any change that does not adversely affect the rights of any Securityholder in any material respect;

(g) to provide for the issuance of and establish the form and terms and conditions of the Securities of any series as provided in Section 2.01, to establish the form of any certifications required to be furnished pursuant to the terms of this Indenture or any series of Securities, or to add to the rights of the holders of any series of Securities;

(h) to evidence and provide for the acceptance of appointment hereunder by a successor trustee; or

(i) to comply with any requirements of the Commission or any successor in connection with the qualification of this Indenture under the Trust Indenture Act.

The Trustee is hereby authorized to join with the Company in the execution of any such supplemental indenture, and to make any further appropriate agreements and stipulations that may be therein contained, but the Trustee shall not be obligated to enter into any such supplemental indenture that affects the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise.

Any supplemental indenture authorized by the provisions of this Section may be executed by the Company and the Trustee without the consent of the holders of any of the Securities at the time Outstanding, notwithstanding any of the provisions of Section 9.02.

Section 9.02 Supplemental Indentures With Consent of Securityholders.

With the consent (evidenced as provided in Section 8.01) of the holders of not less than a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of each series affected by such supplemental indenture or indentures at the time Outstanding, the Company, when authorized by a Board Resolution, and the Trustee may from time to time and at any time enter into an indenture or indentures supplemental hereto (which shall conform to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act as then in effect) for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or eliminating any of the provisions of this Indenture or of any supplemental indenture or of modifying in any manner not covered by Section 9.01 the rights of the holders of the Securities of such series under this Indenture; provided, however, that no such supplemental indenture shall, without the consent of the holders of each Security then Outstanding and affected thereby, (a) extend the fixed maturity of any Securities of any series, or reduce the principal amount thereof, or reduce the rate or extend the time of payment of interest thereon, or reduce any premium payable upon the redemption thereof or (b) reduce the aforesaid percentage of Securities, the holders of which are required to consent to any such supplemental indenture.

It shall not be necessary for the consent of the Securityholders of any series affected thereby under this Section to approve the particular form of any proposed supplemental indenture, but it shall be sufficient if such consent shall approve the substance thereof.

Section 9.03 **Effect of Supplemental Indentures.**

Upon the execution of any supplemental indenture pursuant to the provisions of this Article or of Section 10.01, this Indenture shall, with respect to such series, be and be deemed to be modified and amended in accordance therewith and the respective rights, limitations of rights, obligations, duties and immunities under this Indenture of the Trustee, the Company and the holders of Securities of the series affected thereby shall thereafter be determined, exercised and enforced hereunder subject in all respects to such modifications and amendments, and all the terms and conditions of any such supplemental indenture shall be and be deemed to be part of the terms and conditions of this Indenture for any and all purposes.

Section 9.04 **Securities Affected by Supplemental Indentures.**

Securities of any series affected by a supplemental indenture, authenticated and delivered after the execution of such supplemental indenture pursuant to the provisions of this Article or of Section 10.01, may bear a notation in form approved by the Company, provided such form meets the requirements of any securities exchange upon which such series may be listed, as to any matter provided for in such supplemental indenture. If the Company shall so determine, new Securities of that series so modified as to conform, in the opinion of the Board of Directors, to any modification of this Indenture contained in any such supplemental indenture may be prepared by the Company, authenticated by the Trustee and delivered in exchange for the Securities of that series then Outstanding.

Section 9.05 **Execution of Supplemental Indentures.**

Upon the request of the Company, accompanied by its Board Resolutions authorizing the execution of any such supplemental indenture, and upon the filing with the Trustee of evidence of the consent of Securityholders required to consent thereto as aforesaid, the Trustee shall join with the Company in the execution of such supplemental indenture unless such supplemental indenture affects the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise, in which case the Trustee may in its discretion but shall not be obligated to enter into such supplemental indenture. The Trustee, subject to the provisions of Section 7.01, shall receive an Officer's Certificate or an Opinion of Counsel as conclusive evidence that any supplemental indenture executed pursuant to this Article is authorized or permitted by the terms of this Article and that all conditions precedent to the execution of the supplemental indenture have been complied with; provided, however, that such Officer's Certificate or Opinion of Counsel need not be provided in connection with the execution of a supplemental indenture that establishes the terms of a series of Securities pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof.

Promptly after the execution by the Company and the Trustee of any supplemental indenture pursuant to the provisions of this Section, the Company shall (or shall direct the Trustee to) transmit by mail, first class postage prepaid, a notice, setting forth in general terms the substance of such supplemental indenture, to the Securityholders of all series affected thereby

.as their names and addresses appear upon the Security Register. Any failure of the Company to mail, or cause the mailing of, such notice, or any defect therein, shall not, however, in any way impair or affect the validity of any such supplemental indenture.

ARTICLE 10

SUCCESSOR ENTITY

Section 10.01 Company May Consolidate, Etc.

Nothing contained in this Indenture shall prevent any consolidation or merger of the Company with or into any other Person (whether or not affiliated with the Company) or successive consolidations or mergers in which the Company or its successor or successors shall be a party or parties, or shall prevent any sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition of the property of the Company or its successor or successors as an entirety, or substantially as an entirety, to any other Person (whether or not affiliated with the Company or its successor or successors); provided, however, the Company hereby covenants and agrees that, upon any such consolidation or merger (in each case, if the Company is not the survivor of such transaction) or any such sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition (other than a sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition to a Subsidiary of the Company), the due and punctual payment of the principal of (premium, if any) and interest on all of the Securities of all series in accordance with the terms of each series, according to their tenor, and the due and punctual performance and observance of all the covenants and conditions of this Indenture with respect to each series or established with respect to such series pursuant to Section 2.01 to be kept or performed by the Company shall be expressly assumed, by supplemental indenture (which shall conform to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act, as then in effect) reasonably satisfactory in form to the Trustee executed and delivered to the Trustee by the entity formed by such consolidation, or into which the Company shall have been merged, or by the entity which shall have acquired such property.

Section 10.02 Successor Entity Substituted.

(a) In case of any such consolidation, merger, sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition and upon the assumption by the successor entity by supplemental indenture, executed and delivered to the Trustee and satisfactory in form to the Trustee, of the obligations set forth under Section 10.01 on all of the Securities of all series Outstanding, such successor entity shall succeed to and be substituted for the Company with the same effect as if it had been named as the Company herein, and thereupon the predecessor corporation shall be relieved of all obligations and covenants under this Indenture and the Securities.

(b) In case of any such consolidation, merger, sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition, such changes in phraseology and form (but not in substance) may be made in the Securities thereafter to be issued as may be appropriate.

(c) Nothing contained in this Article shall require any action by the Company in the case of a consolidation or merger of any Person into the Company where the Company is the survivor of such transaction, or the acquisition by the Company, by purchase or otherwise, of all or any part of the property of any other Person (whether or not affiliated with the Company).

ARTICLE 11

SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE

Section 11.01 **Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture.**

If at any time: (a) the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee for cancellation all Securities of a series theretofore authenticated and not delivered to the Trustee for cancellation (other than any Securities that shall have been destroyed, lost or stolen and that shall have been replaced or paid as provided in Section 2.07 and Securities for whose payment money or Governmental Obligations have theretofore been deposited in trust or segregated and held in trust by the Company and thereupon repaid to the Company or discharged from such trust, as provided in Section 11.05); or (b) all such Securities of a particular series not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation shall have become due and payable, or are by their terms to become due and payable within one year or are to be called for redemption within one year under arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for the giving of notice of redemption, and the Company shall deposit or cause to be deposited with the Trustee as trust funds the entire amount in moneys or Governmental Obligations or a combination thereof, sufficient in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, to pay at maturity or upon redemption all Securities of that series not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, including principal (and premium, if any) and interest due or to become due to such date of maturity or date fixed for redemption, as the case may be, and if the Company shall also pay or cause to be paid all other sums payable hereunder with respect to such series by the Company then this Indenture shall thereupon cease to be of further effect with respect to such series except for the provisions of Sections 2.03, 2.05, 2.07, 4.01, 4.02, 4.03 and 7.10, that shall survive until the date of maturity or redemption date, as the case may be, and Sections 7.06 and 11.05, that shall survive to such date and thereafter, and the Trustee, on demand of the Company and at the cost and expense of the Company shall execute proper instruments acknowledging satisfaction of and discharging this Indenture with respect to such series.

Section 11.02 **Discharge of Obligations.**

If at any time all such Securities of a particular series not heretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation or that have not become due and payable as described in Section 11.01 shall have been paid by the Company by depositing irrevocably with the Trustee as trust funds moneys or an amount of Governmental Obligations sufficient to pay at maturity or upon redemption all such Securities of that series not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, including principal (and premium, if any) and interest due or to become due to such date of maturity or date fixed for redemption, as the case may be, and if the Company shall also pay or cause to be paid all other sums payable hereunder by the Company with respect to such series, then after the date such moneys or Governmental Obligations, as the case may be, are deposited with the Trustee the obligations of the Company under this Indenture with respect to such series shall cease to be of further effect except for the provisions of Sections 2.03, 2.05, 2.07, 4.01, 4.02, 4.03, 7.06, 7.10 and 11.05 hereof that shall survive until such Securities shall mature and be paid.

Thereafter, Sections 7.06 and 11.05 shall survive.

Section 11.03 Deposited Moneys to be Held in Trust.

All moneys or Governmental Obligations deposited with the Trustee pursuant to Sections 11.01 or 11.02 shall be held in trust and shall be available for payment as due, either directly or through any paying agent (including the Company acting as its own paying agent), to the holders of the particular series of Securities for the payment or redemption of which such moneys or Governmental Obligations have been deposited with the Trustee.

Section 11.04 Payment of Moneys Held by Paying Agents.

In connection with the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture all moneys or Governmental Obligations then held by any paying agent under the provisions of this Indenture shall, upon demand of the Company, be paid to the Trustee and thereupon such paying agent shall be released from all further liability with respect to such moneys or Governmental Obligations.

Section 11.05 Repayment to Company.

Any moneys or Governmental Obligations deposited with any paying agent or the Trustee, or then held by the Company, in trust for payment of principal of or premium, if any, or interest on the Securities of a particular series that are not applied but remain unclaimed by the holders of such Securities for at least two years after the date upon which the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on such Securities shall have respectively become due and payable, or such other shorter period set forth in applicable escheat or abandoned or unclaimed property law, shall be repaid to the Company on May 31 of each year or upon the Company's request or (if then held by the Company) shall be discharged from such trust; and thereupon the paying agent and the Trustee shall be released from all further liability with respect to such moneys or Governmental Obligations, and the holder of any of the Securities entitled to receive such payment shall thereafter, as a general creditor, look only to the Company for the payment thereof.

ARTICLE 12

IMMUNITY OF INCORPORATORS, STOCKHOLDERS, OFFICERS AND DIRECTORS

Section 12.01 No Recourse.

No recourse under or upon any obligation, covenant or agreement of this Indenture, or of any Security, or for any claim based thereon or otherwise in respect thereof, shall be had against any incorporator, stockholder, officer or director, past, present or future as such, of the Company or of any predecessor or successor corporation, either directly or through the Company or any such predecessor or successor corporation, whether by virtue of any constitution, statute or rule of law, or by the enforcement of any assessment or penalty or otherwise; it being expressly understood that this Indenture and the obligations issued hereunder are solely corporate obligations, and that no such personal liability whatever shall attach to, or is or shall be incurred

by, the incorporators, stockholders, officers or directors as such, of the Company or of any predecessor or successor corporation, or any of them, because of the creation of the indebtedness hereby authorized, or under or by reason of the obligations, covenants or agreements contained in this Indenture or in any of the Securities or implied therefrom; and that any and all such personal liability of every name and nature, either at common law or in equity or by constitution or statute, of, and any and all such rights and claims against, every such incorporator, stockholder, officer or director as such, because of the creation of the indebtedness hereby authorized, or under or by reason of the obligations, covenants or agreements contained in this Indenture or in any of the Securities or implied therefrom, are hereby expressly waived and released as a condition of, and as a consideration for, the execution of this Indenture and the issuance of such Securities.

ARTICLE 13

MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

Section 13.01 **Effect on Successors and Assigns.**

All the covenants, stipulations, promises and agreements in this Indenture made by or on behalf of the Company shall bind its successors and assigns, whether so expressed or not.

Section 13.02 **Actions by Successor.**

Any act or proceeding by any provision of this Indenture authorized or required to be done or performed by any board, committee or officer of the Company shall and may be done and performed with like force and effect by the corresponding board, committee or officer of any corporation that shall at the time be the lawful successor of the Company.

Section 13.03 **Surrender of Company Powers.**

The Company by instrument in writing executed by authority of its Board of Directors and delivered to the Trustee may surrender any of the powers reserved to the Company, and thereupon such power so surrendered shall terminate both as to the Company and as to any successor corporation.

Section 13.04 **Notices.**

Except as otherwise expressly provided herein, any notice, request or demand that by any provision of this Indenture is required or permitted to be given, made or served by the Trustee, the Security Registrar, any paying or other agent under this Indenture or by the holders of Securities or by any other Person pursuant to this Indenture to or on the Company may be given or served by being deposited in first class mail, postage prepaid, addressed (until another address is filed in writing by the Company with the Trustee), as follows:_____ . Any notice, election, request or demand by the Company or any Securityholder or by any other Person pursuant to this Indenture to or upon the Trustee shall be deemed to have been sufficiently given or made, for all purposes, if given or made in writing at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee.

Section 13.05 **Governing Law; Jury Trial Waiver.**

This Indenture and each Security shall be governed by, and construed in accordance with, the internal laws of the State of New York, except to the extent that the Trust Indenture Act is applicable.

EACH PARTY HERETO, AND EACH HOLDER OF A SECURITY BY ACCEPTANCE THEREOF, HEREBY WAIVES, TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ANY RIGHT IT MAY HAVE TO A TRIAL BY JURY IN RESPECT OF ANY LITIGATION DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY ARISING OUT OF, UNDER OR IN CONNECTION WITH THIS INDENTURE.

Section 13.06 **Treatment of Securities as Debt.**

It is intended that the Securities will be treated as indebtedness and not as equity for federal income tax purposes. The provisions of this Indenture shall be interpreted to further this intention.

Section 13.07 **Certificates and Opinions as to Conditions Precedent.**

(a) Upon any application or demand by the Company to the Trustee to take any action under any of the provisions of this Indenture, the Company shall furnish to the Trustee an Officer's Certificate stating that all conditions precedent provided for in this Indenture (other than the certificate to be delivered pursuant to Section 13.12) relating to the proposed action have been complied with and, if requested, an Opinion of Counsel stating that in the opinion of such counsel all such conditions precedent have been complied with, except that in the case of any such application or demand as to which the furnishing of such documents is specifically required by any provision of this Indenture relating to such particular application or demand, no additional certificate or opinion need be furnished.

(b) Each certificate or opinion provided for in this Indenture and delivered to the Trustee with respect to compliance with a condition or covenant in this Indenture (other than the certificate to be delivered pursuant to Section 13.12 or Section 314(a)(1) of the Trust Indenture Act) shall include (i) a statement that the Person making such certificate or opinion has read such covenant or condition; (ii) a brief statement as to the nature and scope of the examination or investigation upon which the statements or opinions contained in such certificate or opinion are based; (iii) a statement that, in the opinion of such Person, he or she has made such examination or investigation as is reasonably necessary to enable him or her to express an informed opinion as to whether or not such covenant or condition has been complied with; and (iv) a statement as to whether or not, in the opinion of such Person, such condition or covenant has been complied with.

Section 13.08 **Payments on Business Days.**

Except as provided pursuant to Section 2.01 pursuant to a Board Resolution, and set forth in an Officer's Certificate, or established in one or more indentures supplemental to this Indenture, in any case where the date of maturity of interest or principal of any Security or the date of redemption of any Security shall not be a Business Day, then payment of interest or

principal (and premium, if any) may be made on the next succeeding Business Day with the same force and effect as if made on the nominal date of maturity or redemption, and no interest shall accrue for the period after such nominal date.

Section 13.09 **Conflict with Trust Indenture Act.**

If and to the extent that any provision of this Indenture limits, qualifies or conflicts with the duties imposed by Section 318(c) of the Trust Indenture Act, such imposed duties shall control.

Section 13.10 **Counterparts.**

This Indenture may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which shall be an original, but such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument. The exchange of copies of this Indenture and of signature pages by facsimile or PDF transmission shall constitute effective execution and delivery of this Indenture as to the parties hereto and may be used in lieu of the original Indenture for all purposes. Signatures of the parties hereto transmitted by facsimile or PDF shall be deemed to be their original signatures for all purposes.

Section 13.11 **Separability.**

In case any one or more of the provisions contained in this Indenture or in the Securities of any series shall for any reason be held to be invalid, illegal or unenforceable in any respect, such invalidity, illegality or unenforceability shall not affect any other provisions of this Indenture or of such Securities, but this Indenture and such Securities shall be construed as if such invalid or illegal or unenforceable provision had never been contained herein or therein.

Section 13.12 **Compliance Certificates.**

The Company shall deliver to the Trustee, within 120 days after the end of each fiscal year during which any Securities of any series were outstanding, an officer's certificate stating whether or not the signers know of any Event of Default that occurred during such fiscal year. Such certificate shall contain a certification from the principal executive officer, principal financial officer or principal accounting officer of the Company that a review has been conducted of the activities of the Company and the Company's performance under this Indenture and that the Company has complied with all conditions and covenants under this Indenture. For purposes of this Section 13.12, such compliance shall be determined without regard to any period of grace or requirement of notice provided under this Indenture. If the officer of the Company signing such certificate has knowledge of such an Event of Default, the certificate shall describe any such Event of Default and its status.

Section 13.13 **U.S.A. Patriot Act.**

The parties hereto acknowledge that in accordance with Section 326 of the U.S.A. Patriot Act, the Trustee, like all financial institutions and in order to help fight the funding of terrorism and money laundering, is required to obtain, verify, and record information that identifies each person or legal entity that establishes a relationship or opens an account with the Trustee. The

parties to this Indenture agree that they will provide the Trustee with such information as it may request in order for the Trustee to satisfy the requirements of the U.S.A. Patriot Act.

Section 13.14 **Force Majeure.**

In no event shall the Trustee, the Security Registrar, any paying agent or any other agent under this Indenture be responsible or liable for any failure or delay in the performance of its obligations hereunder arising out of or caused by, directly or indirectly, forces beyond its control, including without limitation, strikes, work stoppages, accidents, acts of war or terrorism, civil or military disturbances, nuclear or natural catastrophes or acts of God, and interruptions, loss or malfunctions of utilities, communications or computer (software and hardware) services; it being understood that the Trustee, the Security Registrar, any paying agent or any other agent under this Indenture shall use reasonable efforts which are consistent with accepted practices in the banking industry to resume performance as soon as practicable under the circumstances.

Section 13.15 **Table of Contents; Headings.**

The table of contents and headings of the articles and sections of this Indenture have been inserted for convenience of reference only, are not intended to be considered a part hereof, and will not modify or restrict any of the terms or provisions hereof.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Indenture to be duly executed all as of the day and year first above written.

APEVO THERAPEUTICS INC.

By: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

[TRUSTEE], as Trustee

By: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

CROSS-REFERENCE TABLE (1)

Section of Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as Amended	Section of Indenture
310(a)	7.09
310(b)	7.08
	7.10
310(c)	Inapplicable
311(a)	7.13
311(b)	7.13
311(c)	Inapplicable
312(a)	5.01
	5.02(a)
312(b)	5.02(c)
312(c)	5.02(c)
313(a)	5.04(a)
313(b)	5.04(b)
313(c)	5.04(a)
	5.04(b)
313(d)	5.04(c)
314(a)	5.03
	13.12
314(b)	Inapplicable
314(c)	13.07(a)
314(d)	Inapplicable
314(e)	13.07(b)
314(f)	Inapplicable
315(a)	7.01(a)
	7.01(b)
315(b)	7.14
315(c)	7.01
315(d)	7.01(b)
315(e)	6.07
316(a)	6.06
	8.04
316(b)	6.04
316(c)	8.01
317(a)	6.02
317(b)	4.03
318(a)	13.09

(1) This Cross-Reference Table does not constitute part of the Indenture and shall not have any bearing on the interpretation of any of its terms or provisions.

APTEVO THERAPEUTICS INC.

AND

_____, AS WARRANT AGENT
FORM OF COMMON STOCK
WARRANT AGREEMENT

DATED AS OF [__], 20__

DB1/ 117519074.2

APTEVO THERAPEUTICS INC.
FORM OF COMMON STOCK WARRANT AGREEMENT

COMMON STOCK WARRANT AGREEMENT (this “*Agreement*”), dated as of _____ between **APTEVO THERAPEUTICS INC.**, a Delaware corporation (the “*Company*”), and _____, a [corporation] [national banking association] organized and existing under the laws of _____ and having a corporate trust office in _____, as warrant agent (the “*Warrant Agent*”).

WHEREAS, the Company proposes to sell [if Warrants are sold with other securities—[title of such other securities being offered] (the “*Other Securities*”) with] warrant certificates evidencing one or more warrants (the “*Warrants*” or, individually, a “*Warrant*”) representing the right to purchase Common Stock of the Company, par value \$0.001 per share (the “*Warrant Securities*”), such warrant certificates and other warrant certificates issued pursuant to this Agreement being herein called the “*Warrant Certificates*,” and

WHEREAS, the Company desires the Warrant Agent to act on behalf of the Company, and the Warrant Agent is willing so to act, in connection with the issuance, registration, transfer, exchange, exercise and replacement of the Warrant Certificates, and in this Agreement wishes to set forth, among other things, the form and provisions of the Warrant Certificates and the terms and conditions on which they may be issued, registered, transferred, exchanged, exercised and replaced.

NOW THEREFORE, in consideration of the premises and of the mutual agreements herein contained, the parties hereto agree as follows:

ARTICLE 1

ISSUANCE OF WARRANTS AND EXECUTION AND DELIVERY OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES

1.1 Issuance Of Warrants. [If Warrants alone—Upon issuance, each Warrant Certificate shall evidence one or more Warrants.] [If Other Securities and Warrants—Warrant Certificates shall be [initially] issued in connection with the issuance of the Other Securities [but shall be separately transferable on and after _____ (the “*Detachable Date*”) [and shall not be separately transferable] and each Warrant Certificate shall evidence one or more Warrants.] Each Warrant evidenced thereby shall represent the right, subject to the provisions contained herein and therein, to purchase one Warrant Security. [If Other Securities and Warrants—Warrant Certificates shall be initially issued in units with the Other Securities and each Warrant Certificate included in such a unit shall evidence _____ Warrants for each [\$_____ principal amount] [_____ shares] of Other Securities included in such unit.]

1.2 Execution And Delivery Of Warrant Certificates. Each Warrant Certificate, whenever issued, shall be in registered form substantially in the form set forth in **Exhibit A** hereto, shall be dated the date of its countersignature by the Warrant Agent and may have such letters, numbers, or other marks of identification or designation and such legends or endorsements printed, lithographed or engraved thereon as the officers of the Company

2.

executing the same may approve (execution thereof to be conclusive evidence of such approval) and as are not inconsistent with the provisions of this Agreement, or as may be required to comply with any law or with any rule or regulation made pursuant thereto or with any rule or regulation of any securities exchange on which the Warrants may be listed, or to conform to usage. The Warrant Certificates shall be signed on behalf of the Company by any of its present or future chief executive officers, presidents, senior vice presidents, vice presidents, chief financial officers, chief legal officers, treasurers, assistant treasurers, controllers, assistant controllers, secretaries or assistant secretaries under its corporate seal reproduced thereon. Such signatures may be manual or facsimile signatures of such authorized officers and may be imprinted or otherwise reproduced on the Warrant Certificates. The seal of the Company may be in the form of a facsimile thereof and may be impressed, affixed, imprinted or otherwise reproduced on the Warrant Certificates.

No Warrant Certificate shall be valid for any purpose, and no Warrant evidenced thereby shall be exercisable, until such Warrant Certificate has been countersigned by the manual signature of the Warrant Agent. Such signature by the Warrant Agent upon any Warrant Certificate executed by the Company shall be conclusive evidence that the Warrant Certificate so countersigned has been duly issued hereunder.

In case any officer of the Company who shall have signed any of the Warrant Certificates either manually or by facsimile signature shall cease to be such officer before the Warrant Certificates so signed shall have been countersigned and delivered by the Warrant Agent, such Warrant Certificates may be countersigned and delivered notwithstanding that the person who signed Warrant Certificates ceased to be such officer of the Company; and any Warrant Certificate may be signed on behalf of the Company by such persons as, at the actual date of the execution of such Warrant Certificate, shall be the proper officers of the Company, although at the date of the execution of this Agreement any such person was not such officer.

The term “holder” or “holder of a Warrant Certificate” as used herein shall mean any person in whose name at the time any Warrant Certificate shall be registered upon the books to be maintained by the Warrant Agent for that purpose [If Other Securities and Warrants are not immediately detachable—or upon the registration of the Other Securities prior to the Detachable Date. Prior to the Detachable Date, the Company will, or will cause the registrar of the Other Securities to, make available at all times to the Warrant Agent such information as to holders of the Other Securities as may be necessary to keep the Warrant Agent’s records up to date].

1.3 Issuance Of Warrant Certificates. Warrant Certificates evidencing the right to purchase Warrant Securities may be executed by the Company and delivered to the Warrant Agent upon the execution of this Warrant Agreement or from time to time thereafter. The Warrant Agent shall, upon receipt of Warrant Certificates duly executed on behalf of the Company, countersign such Warrant Certificates and shall deliver such Warrant Certificates to or upon the order of the Company.

ARTICLE 2

WARRANT PRICE, DURATION AND EXERCISE OF WARRANTS

2.1 Warrant Price. During the period specified in Section 2.2, each Warrant shall, subject to the terms of this Warrant Agreement and the applicable Warrant Certificate, entitle the holder thereof to purchase the number of Warrant Securities specified in the applicable Warrant Certificate at an exercise price of \$ _____ per Warrant Security, subject to adjustment upon the occurrence of certain events, as hereinafter provided. Such purchase price per Warrant Security is referred to in this Agreement as the "*Warrant Price*."

2.2 Duration Of Warrants. Each Warrant may be exercised in whole or in part at any time, as specified herein, on or after [the date thereof] [_____] and at or before [_____] p.m., [_____] time, on [_____] or such later date as the Company may designate by notice to the Warrant Agent and the holders of Warrant Certificates mailed to their addresses as set forth in the record books of the Warrant Agent (the "*Expiration Date*"). Each Warrant not exercised at or before [_____] p.m., [_____] time, on the Expiration Date shall become void, and all rights of the holder of the Warrant Certificate evidencing such Warrant under this Agreement shall cease.

2.3 Exercise Of Warrants.

(a) During the period specified in Section 2.2, the Warrants may be exercised to purchase a whole number of Warrant Securities in registered form by providing certain information as set forth on the reverse side of the Warrant Certificate and by paying in full, in lawful money of the United States of America, [in cash or by certified check or official bank check in New York Clearing House funds] [by bank wire transfer in immediately available funds] the Warrant Price for each Warrant Security with respect to which a Warrant is being exercised to the Warrant Agent at its corporate trust office, provided that such exercise is subject to receipt within five business days of such payment by the Warrant Agent of the Warrant Certificate with the form of election to purchase Warrant Securities set forth on the reverse side of the Warrant Certificate properly completed and duly executed. The date on which payment in full of the Warrant Price is received by the Warrant Agent shall, subject to receipt of the Warrant Certificate as aforesaid, be deemed to be the date on which the Warrant is exercised; provided, however, that if, at the date of receipt of such Warrant Certificates and payment in full of the Warrant Price, the transfer books for the Warrant Securities purchasable upon the exercise of such Warrants shall be closed, no such receipt of such Warrant Certificates and no such payment of such Warrant Price shall be effective to constitute the person so designated to be named as the holder of record of such Warrant Securities on such date, but shall be effective to constitute such person as the holder of record of such Warrant Securities for all purposes at the opening of business on the next succeeding day on which the transfer books for the Warrant Securities purchasable upon the exercise of such Warrants shall be opened, and the certificates for the Warrant Securities in respect of which such Warrants are then exercised shall be issuable as of the date on such next succeeding day on which the transfer books shall next be opened, and until such date the Company shall be under no duty to deliver any certificate for such Warrant

Securities. The Warrant Agent shall deposit all funds received by it in payment of the Warrant Price in an account of the Company maintained with it and shall advise the Company by telephone at the end of each day on which a payment for the exercise of Warrants is received of the amount so deposited to its account. The Warrant Agent shall promptly confirm such telephone advice to the Company in writing.

(b) The Warrant Agent shall, from time to time, as promptly as practicable, advise the Company of (i) the number of Warrant Securities with respect to which Warrants were exercised, (ii) the instructions of each holder of the Warrant Certificates evidencing such Warrants with respect to delivery of the Warrant Securities to which such holder is entitled upon such exercise, (iii) delivery of Warrant Certificates evidencing the balance, if any, of the Warrants for the remaining Warrant Securities after such exercise, and (iv) such other information as the Company shall reasonably require.

(c) As soon as practicable after the exercise of any Warrant, the Company shall issue to or upon the order of the holder of the Warrant Certificate evidencing such Warrant the Warrant Securities to which such holder is entitled, in fully registered form, registered in such name or names as may be directed by such holder. If fewer than all of the Warrants evidenced by such Warrant Certificate are exercised, the Company shall execute, and an authorized officer of the Warrant Agent shall manually countersign and deliver, a new Warrant Certificate evidencing Warrants for the number of Warrant Securities remaining unexercised.

(d) The Company shall not be required to pay any stamp or other tax or other governmental charge required to be paid in connection with any transfer involved in the issue of the Warrant Securities, and in the event that any such transfer is involved, the Company shall not be required to issue or deliver any Warrant Security until such tax or other charge shall have been paid or it has been established to the Company's satisfaction that no such tax or other charge is due.

(e) Prior to the issuance of any Warrants there shall have been reserved, and the Company shall at all times through the Expiration Date keep reserved, out of its authorized but unissued Warrant Securities, a number of shares sufficient to provide for the exercise of the Warrants.

ARTICLE 3

OTHER PROVISIONS RELATING TO RIGHTS OF HOLDERS OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES

3.1 No Rights As Warrant Securityholder Conferred By Warrants Or Warrant Certificates. No Warrant Certificate or Warrant evidenced thereby shall entitle the holder thereof to any of the rights of a holder of Warrant Securities, including, without limitation, the right to receive the payment of dividends or distributions, if any, on the Warrant Securities or to exercise any voting rights, except to the extent expressly set forth in this Agreement or the applicable Warrant Certificate.

3.2 Lost, Stolen, Mutilated Or Destroyed Warrant Certificates. Upon receipt by the Warrant Agent of evidence reasonably satisfactory to it and the Company of the ownership of and the loss, theft, destruction or mutilation of any Warrant Certificate and/or indemnity reasonably satisfactory to the Warrant Agent and the Company and, in the case of mutilation, upon surrender of the mutilated Warrant Certificate to the Warrant Agent for cancellation, then, in the absence of notice to the Company or the Warrant Agent that such Warrant Certificate has been acquired by a bona fide purchaser, the Company shall execute, and an authorized officer of the Warrant Agent shall manually countersign and deliver, in exchange for or in lieu of the lost, stolen, destroyed or mutilated Warrant Certificate, a new Warrant Certificate of the same tenor and evidencing Warrants for a like number of Warrant Securities. Upon the issuance of any new Warrant Certificate under this Section 3.2, the Company may require the payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto and any other expenses (including the fees and expenses of the Warrant Agent) in connection therewith. Every substitute Warrant Certificate executed and delivered pursuant to this Section 3.2 in lieu of any lost, stolen or destroyed Warrant Certificate shall represent an additional contractual obligation of the Company, whether or not the lost, stolen or destroyed Warrant Certificate shall be at any time enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to the benefits of this Agreement equally and proportionately with any and all other Warrant Certificates duly executed and delivered hereunder. The provisions of this Section 3.2 are exclusive and shall preclude (to the extent lawful) all other rights and remedies with respect to the replacement of mutilated, lost, stolen or destroyed Warrant Certificates.

3.3 Holder Of Warrant Certificate May Enforce Rights. Notwithstanding any of the provisions of this Agreement, any holder of a Warrant Certificate, without the consent of the Warrant Agent, the holder of any Warrant Securities or the holder of any other Warrant Certificate, may, in such holder's own behalf and for such holder's own benefit, enforce, and may institute and maintain any suit, action or proceeding against the Company suitable to enforce, or otherwise in respect of, such holder's right to exercise the Warrants evidenced by such holder's Warrant Certificate in the manner provided in such holder's Warrant Certificate and in this Agreement.

3.4 Adjustments.

(a) In case the Company shall at any time subdivide its outstanding shares of Common Stock into a greater number of shares, the Warrant Price in effect immediately prior to such subdivision shall be proportionately reduced and the number of Warrant Securities purchasable under the Warrants shall be proportionately increased. Conversely, in case the outstanding shares of Common Stock of the Company shall be combined into a smaller number of shares, the Warrant Price in effect immediately prior to such combination shall be proportionately increased and the number of Warrant Securities purchasable under the Warrants shall be proportionately decreased.

(b) If at any time or from time to time the holders of Common Stock (or any shares of stock or other securities at the time receivable upon the exercise of the Warrants) shall have received or become entitled to receive, without payment therefore,

(i) Common Stock or any shares of stock or other securities which are at any time directly or indirectly convertible into or exchangeable for Common Stock, or any rights or options to subscribe for, purchase or otherwise acquire any of the foregoing by way of dividend or other distribution;

(ii) any cash paid or payable otherwise than as a cash dividend paid or payable out of the Company's current or retained earnings;

(iii) any evidence of the Company's indebtedness or rights to subscribe for or purchase the Company's indebtedness; or

(iv) Common Stock or additional stock or other securities or property (including cash) by way of spinoff, split-up, reclassification, combination of shares or similar corporate rearrangement (other than shares of Common Stock issued as a stock split or adjustments in respect of which shall be covered by the terms of Section 3.4(a) above), then and in each such case, the holder of each Warrant shall, upon the exercise of the Warrant, be entitled to receive, in addition to the number of Warrant Securities receivable thereupon, and without payment of any additional consideration therefore, the amount of stock and other securities and property (including cash and indebtedness or rights to subscribe for or purchase indebtedness) which such holder would hold on the date of such exercise had he been the holder of record of such Warrant Securities as of the date on which holders of Common Stock received or became entitled to receive such shares or all other additional stock and other securities and property.

(c) In case of (i) any reclassification, capital reorganization, or change in the Common Stock of the Company (other than as a result of a subdivision, combination, or stock dividend provided for in Section 3.4(a) or Section 3.4(b) above), (ii) share exchange, merger or similar transaction of the Company with or into another person or entity (other than a share exchange, merger or similar transaction in which the Company is the acquiring or surviving corporation and which does not result in any change in the Common Stock other than the issuance of additional shares of Common Stock) or (iii) the sale, exchange, lease, transfer or other disposition of all or substantially all of the properties and assets of the Company as an entirety (in any such case, a "**Reorganization Event**"), then, as a condition of such Reorganization Event, lawful provisions shall be made, and duly executed documents evidencing the same from the Company or its successor shall be delivered to the holders of the Warrants, so that the holders of the Warrants shall have the right at any time prior to the expiration of the Warrants to purchase, at a total price equal to that payable upon the exercise of the Warrants, the kind and amount of shares of stock and other securities and property receivable in connection with such Reorganization Event by a holder of the same number of Warrant Securities as were purchasable by the holders of the Warrants immediately prior to such Reorganization Event. In any such case appropriate provisions shall be made with respect to the rights and interests of the holders of the Warrants so that the provisions hereof shall thereafter be applicable with respect to any shares of stock or other securities and property deliverable upon exercise the Warrants, and appropriate adjustments shall be made to the Warrant Price payable hereunder provided the

aggregate purchase price shall remain the same. In the case of any transaction described in clauses (ii) and (iii) above, the Company shall thereupon be relieved of any further obligation hereunder or under the Warrants, and the Company as the predecessor corporation may thereupon or at any time thereafter be dissolved, wound up or liquidated. Such successor or assuming entity thereupon may cause to be signed, and may issue either in its own name or in the name of the Company, any or all of the Warrants issuable hereunder which heretofore shall not have been signed by the Company, and may execute and deliver securities in its own name, in fulfillment of its obligations to deliver Warrant Securities upon exercise of the Warrants. All the Warrants so issued shall in all respects have the same legal rank and benefit under this Agreement as the Warrants theretofore or thereafter issued in accordance with the terms of this Agreement as though all of such Warrants had been issued at the date of the execution hereof. In any case of any such Reorganization Event, such changes in phraseology and form (but not in substance) may be made in the Warrants thereafter to be issued as may be appropriate. The Warrant Agent may receive a written opinion of legal counsel as conclusive evidence that any such Reorganization Event complies with the provisions of this Section 3.4.

(d) The Company may, at its option, at any time until the Expiration Date, reduce the then current Warrant Price to any amount deemed appropriate by the Board of Directors of the Company for any period not exceeding twenty consecutive days (as evidenced in a resolution adopted by such Board of Directors), but only upon giving the notices required by Section 3.5 at least ten days prior to taking such action.

(e) Except as herein otherwise expressly provided, no adjustment in the Warrant Price shall be made by reason of the issuance of shares of Common Stock, or securities convertible into or exchangeable for shares of Common Stock, or securities carrying the right to purchase any of the foregoing or for any other reason whatsoever.

(f) No fractional Warrant Securities shall be issued upon the exercise of Warrants. If more than one Warrant shall be exercised at one time by the same holder, the number of full Warrant Securities which shall be issuable upon such exercise shall be computed on the basis of the aggregate number of Warrant Securities purchased pursuant to the Warrants so exercised. Instead of any fractional Warrant Security which would otherwise be issuable upon exercise of any Warrant, the Company shall pay a cash adjustment in respect of such fraction in an amount equal to the same fraction of the last sales price (or bid price if there were no sales) per Warrant Security, in either case as reported on the principal registered national securities exchange on which the Warrant Securities are listed or admitted to trading on the business day that next precedes the day of exercise or, if the Warrant Securities are not then listed or admitted to trading on any registered national securities exchange, the average of the closing high bid and low asked prices as reported on the OTC Bulletin Board Service (the "**OTC Bulletin Board**") operated by the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, Inc. ("**FINRA**") or, if not available on the OTC Bulletin Board, then the average of the closing high bid and low asked prices as reported on any other U.S. quotation medium or inter-dealer quotation system on such date, or if on any such date the Warrant Securities are not listed or admitted to trading on a registered national securities exchange, are not included in the OTC Bulletin Board, and are not quoted on any other U.S. quotation medium or inter-dealer quotation system, an amount equal to the same fraction of the average of the closing bid and asked prices as furnished by any FINRA member

firm selected from time to time by the Company for that purpose at the close of business on the business day that next precedes the day of exercise.

(g) Whenever the Warrant Price then in effect is adjusted as herein provided, the Company shall mail to each holder of the Warrants at such holder's address as it shall appear on the books of the Company a statement setting forth the adjusted Warrant Price then and thereafter effective under the provisions hereof, together with the facts, in reasonable detail, upon which such adjustment is based.

(h) Notwithstanding anything to the contrary herein, in no event shall the Warrant Price, as adjusted in accordance with the terms hereof, be less than the par value per share of Common Stock.

3.5 Notice To Warrantholders. In case the Company shall (a) effect any dividend or distribution described in Section 3.4(b), (b) effect any Reorganization Event, (c) make any distribution on or in respect of the Common Stock in connection with the dissolution, liquidation or winding up of the Company, or (d) reduce the then current Warrant Price pursuant to Section 3.4(d), then the Company shall mail to each holder of Warrants at such holder's address as it shall appear on the books of the Warrant Agent, at least ten days prior to the applicable date hereinafter specified, a notice stating (x) the record date for such dividend or distribution, or, if a record is not to be taken, the date as of which the holders of record of Common Stock that will be entitled to such dividend or distribution are to be determined, (y) the date on which such Reorganization Event, dissolution, liquidation or winding up is expected to become effective, and the date as of which it is expected that holders of Common Stock of record shall be entitled to exchange their shares of Common Stock for securities or other property deliverable upon such Reorganization Event, dissolution, liquidation or winding up, or (z) the first date on which the then current Warrant Price shall be reduced pursuant to Section 3.4(d). No failure to mail such notice nor any defect therein or in the mailing thereof shall affect any such transaction or any adjustment in the Warrant Price required by Section 3.4.

3.6 [If The Warrants Are Subject To Acceleration By The Company, Insert—Acceleration Of Warrants By The Company.]

(a) At any time on or after _____, the Company shall have the right to accelerate any or all Warrants at any time by causing them to expire at the close of business on the day next preceding a specified date (the "**Acceleration Date**"), if the Market Price (as hereinafter defined) of the Common Stock equals or exceeds _____ percent (_____%) of the then effective Warrant Price on any twenty Trading Days (as hereinafter defined) within a period of thirty consecutive Trading Days ending no more than five Trading Days prior to the date on which the Company gives notice to the Warrant Agent of its election to accelerate the Warrants.

(b) "**Market Price**" for each Trading Day shall be, if the Common Stock is listed or admitted to trading on any registered national securities exchange, the last reported sale price, regular way (or, if no such price is reported, the average of the reported closing bid and asked prices, regular way) of Common Stock, in either case as reported on the principal registered national securities exchange on which the Common Stock is listed or admitted to trading or, if not listed or admitted to trading on any registered national securities exchange, the average of the

closing high bid and low asked prices as reported on the OTC Bulletin Board operated by FINRA, or if not available on the OTC Bulletin Board, then the average of the closing high bid and low asked prices as reported on any other U.S. quotation medium or inter-dealer quotation system, or if on any such date the shares of Common Stock are not listed or admitted to trading on a registered national securities exchange, are not included in the OTC Bulletin Board, and are not quoted on any other U.S. quotation medium or inter-dealer quotation system, the average of the closing bid and asked prices as furnished by any FINRA member firm selected from time to time by the Company for that purpose. “*Trading Day*” shall be each Monday through Friday, other than any day on which securities are not traded in the system or on the exchange that is the principal market for the Common Stock, as determined by the Board of Directors of the Company.

(c) In the event of an acceleration of less than all of the Warrants, the Warrant Agent shall select the Warrants to be accelerated by lot, pro rata or in such other manner as it deems, in its discretion, to be fair and appropriate.

(d) Notice of an acceleration specifying the Acceleration Date shall be sent by mail first class, postage prepaid, to each registered holder of a Warrant Certificate representing a Warrant accelerated at such holder’s address appearing on the books of the Warrant Agent not more than sixty days nor less than thirty days before the Acceleration Date. Such notice of an acceleration also shall be given no more than twenty days, and no less than ten days, prior to the mailing of notice to registered holders of Warrants pursuant to this Section 3.6, by publication at least once in a newspaper of general circulation in the City of New York.

(e) Any Warrant accelerated may be exercised until [_____] p.m., [_____] time, on the business day next preceding the Acceleration Date. The Warrant Price shall be payable as provided in Section 2.]

ARTICLE 4

EXCHANGE AND TRANSFER OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES

4.1 Exchange And Transfer Of Warrant Certificates. [If Other Securities with Warrants which are immediately detachable—Upon] [If Other Securities with Warrants which are not immediately detachable—Prior to the Detachable Date, a Warrant Certificate may be exchanged or transferred only together with the Other Security to which the Warrant Certificate was initially attached, and only for the purpose of effecting or in conjunction with an exchange or transfer of such Other Security. Prior to any Detachable Date, each transfer of the Other Security shall operate also to transfer the related Warrant Certificates. After the Detachable Date, upon] surrender at the corporate trust office of the Warrant Agent, Warrant Certificates evidencing Warrants may be exchanged for Warrant Certificates in other denominations evidencing such Warrants or the transfer thereof may be registered in whole or in part; provided that such other Warrant Certificates evidence Warrants for the same aggregate number of Warrant Securities as the Warrant Certificates so surrendered. The Warrant Agent shall keep, at its corporate trust office, books in which, subject to such reasonable regulations as it may prescribe, it shall register Warrant Certificates and exchanges and transfers of outstanding Warrant Certificates, upon surrender of the Warrant Certificates to the Warrant Agent at its corporate trust office for exchange or registration of transfer, properly endorsed or accompanied

by appropriate instruments of registration of transfer and written instructions for transfer, all in form satisfactory to the Company and the Warrant Agent. No service charge shall be made for any exchange or registration of transfer of Warrant Certificates, but the Company may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any stamp or other tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in connection with any such exchange or registration of transfer. Whenever any Warrant Certificates are so surrendered for exchange or registration of transfer, an authorized officer of the Warrant Agent shall manually countersign and deliver to the person or persons entitled thereto a Warrant Certificate or Warrant Certificates duly authorized and executed by the Company, as so requested. The Warrant Agent shall not be required to effect any exchange or registration of transfer which will result in the issuance of a Warrant Certificate evidencing a Warrant for a fraction of a Warrant Security or a number of Warrants for a whole number of Warrant Securities and a fraction of a Warrant Security. All Warrant Certificates issued upon any exchange or registration of transfer of Warrant Certificates shall be the valid obligations of the Company, evidencing the same obligations and entitled to the same benefits under this Agreement as the Warrant Certificate surrendered for such exchange or registration of transfer.

4.2 Treatment Of Holders Of Warrant Certificates. [If Other Securities and Warrants are not immediately detachable—Prior to the Detachable Date, the Company, the Warrant Agent and all other persons may treat the owner of the Other Security as the owner of the Warrant Certificates initially attached thereto for any purpose and as the person entitled to exercise the rights represented by the Warrants evidenced by such Warrant Certificates, any notice to the contrary notwithstanding. After the Detachable Date and prior to due presentment of a Warrant Certificate for registration of transfer, the] [The] Company, the Warrant Agent and all other persons may treat the registered holder of a Warrant Certificate as the absolute owner thereof for any purpose and as the person entitled to exercise the rights represented by the Warrants evidenced thereby, any notice to the contrary notwithstanding.

4.3 Cancellation Of Warrant Certificates. Any Warrant Certificate surrendered for exchange, registration of transfer or exercise of the Warrants evidenced thereby shall, if surrendered to the Company, be delivered to the Warrant Agent and all Warrant Certificates surrendered or so delivered to the Warrant Agent shall be promptly canceled by the Warrant Agent and shall not be reissued and, except as expressly permitted by this Agreement, no Warrant Certificate shall be issued hereunder in exchange therefor or in lieu thereof.

The Warrant Agent shall deliver to the Company from time to time or otherwise dispose of canceled Warrant Certificates in a manner satisfactory to the Company.

ARTICLE 5

CONCERNING THE WARRANT AGENT

5.1 Warrant Agent. The Company hereby appoints _____ as Warrant Agent of the Company in respect of the Warrants and the Warrant Certificates upon the terms and subject to the conditions herein set forth, and _____ hereby accepts such appointment. The Warrant Agent shall have the powers and authority granted to and conferred upon it in the Warrant Certificates and hereby and such further powers and authority to act on behalf of the Company as the Company may hereafter grant to or confer upon it. All of the terms and

provisions with respect to such powers and authority contained in the Warrant Certificates are subject to and governed by the terms and provisions hereof.

5.2 Conditions Of Warrant Agent's Obligations. The Warrant Agent accepts its obligations herein set forth upon the terms and conditions hereof, including the following to all of which the Company agrees and to all of which the rights hereunder of the holders from time to time of the Warrant Certificates shall be subject:

(a) **Compensation And Indemnification.** The Company agrees promptly to pay the Warrant Agent the compensation to be agreed upon with the Company for all services rendered by the Warrant Agent and to reimburse the Warrant Agent for reasonable out-of-pocket expenses (including reasonable counsel fees) incurred without negligence, bad faith or willful misconduct by the Warrant Agent in connection with the services rendered hereunder by the Warrant Agent. The Company also agrees to indemnify the Warrant Agent for, and to hold it harmless against, any loss, liability or expense incurred without negligence, bad faith or willful misconduct on the part of the Warrant Agent, arising out of or in connection with its acting as Warrant Agent hereunder, including the reasonable costs and expenses of defending against any claim of such liability.

(b) **Agent For The Company.** In acting under this Warrant Agreement and in connection with the Warrant Certificates, the Warrant Agent is acting solely as agent of the Company and does not assume any obligations or relationship of agency or trust for or with any of the holders of Warrant Certificates or beneficial owners of Warrants.

(c) **Counsel.** The Warrant Agent may consult with counsel satisfactory to it, which may include counsel for the Company, and the written advice of such counsel shall be full and complete authorization and protection in respect of any action taken, suffered or omitted by it hereunder in good faith and in accordance with the advice of such counsel.

(d) **Documents.** The Warrant Agent shall be protected and shall incur no liability for or in respect of any action taken or omitted by it in reliance upon any Warrant Certificate, notice, direction, consent, certificate, affidavit, statement or other paper or document reasonably believed by it to be genuine and to have been presented or signed by the proper parties.

(e) **Certain Transactions.** The Warrant Agent, and its officers, directors and employees, may become the owner of, or acquire any interest in, Warrants, with the same rights that it or they would have if it were not the Warrant Agent hereunder, and, to the extent permitted by applicable law, it or they may engage or be interested in any financial or other transaction with the Company and may act on, or as depository, trustee or agent for, any committee or body of holders of Warrant Securities or other obligations of the Company as freely as if it were not the Warrant Agent hereunder. Nothing in this Warrant Agreement shall be deemed to prevent the Warrant Agent from acting as trustee under any indenture to which the Company is a party.

(f) No Liability For Interest. Unless otherwise agreed with the Company, the Warrant Agent shall have no liability for interest on any monies at any time received by it pursuant to any of the provisions of this Agreement or of the Warrant Certificates.

(g) No Liability For Invalidity. The Warrant Agent shall have no liability with respect to any invalidity of this Agreement or any of the Warrant Certificates (except as to the Warrant Agent's countersignature thereon).

(h) No Responsibility For Representations. The Warrant Agent shall not be responsible for any of the recitals or representations herein or in the Warrant Certificates (except as to the Warrant Agent's countersignature thereon), all of which are made solely by the Company.

(i) No Implied Obligations. The Warrant Agent shall be obligated to perform only such duties as are herein and in the Warrant Certificates specifically set forth and no implied duties or obligations shall be read into this Agreement or the Warrant Certificates against the Warrant Agent. The Warrant Agent shall not be under any obligation to take any action hereunder which may tend to involve it in any expense or liability, the payment of which within a reasonable time is not, in its reasonable opinion, assured to it. The Warrant Agent shall not be accountable or under any duty or responsibility for the use by the Company of any of the Warrant Certificates authenticated by the Warrant Agent and delivered by it to the Company pursuant to this Agreement or for the application by the Company of the proceeds of the Warrant Certificates. The Warrant Agent shall have no duty or responsibility in case of any default by the Company in the performance of its covenants or agreements contained herein or in the Warrant Certificates or in the case of the receipt of any written demand from a holder of a Warrant Certificate with respect to such default, including, without limiting the generality of the foregoing, any duty or responsibility to initiate or attempt to initiate any proceedings at law or otherwise or, except as provided in Section 6.2 hereof, to make any demand upon the Company.

5.3 Resignation, Removal And Appointment Of Successors.

(a) The Company agrees, for the benefit of the holders from time to time of the Warrant Certificates, that there shall at all times be a Warrant Agent hereunder until all the Warrants have been exercised or are no longer exercisable.

(b) The Warrant Agent may at any time resign as agent by giving written notice to the Company of such intention on its part, specifying the date on which its desired resignation shall become effective; provided that such date shall not be less than three months after the date on which such notice is given unless the Company otherwise agrees. The Warrant Agent hereunder may be removed at any time by the filing with it of an instrument in writing signed by or on behalf of the Company and specifying such removal and the intended date when it shall become effective. Such resignation or removal shall take effect upon the appointment by the Company, as hereinafter provided, of a successor Warrant Agent (which shall be a bank or trust company authorized under the laws of the jurisdiction of its organization to exercise corporate trust powers) and the acceptance of such appointment by such successor Warrant Agent. The obligation of the Company under Section 5.2(a) shall continue to the extent set forth therein notwithstanding the resignation or removal of the Warrant Agent.

(c) In case at any time the Warrant Agent shall resign, or shall be removed, or shall become incapable of acting, or shall be adjudged a bankrupt or insolvent, or shall commence a voluntary case under the Federal bankruptcy laws, as now or hereafter constituted, or under any other applicable Federal or state bankruptcy, insolvency or similar law or shall consent to the appointment of or taking possession by a receiver, custodian, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator (or other similar official) of the Warrant Agent or its property or affairs, or shall make an assignment for the benefit of creditors, or shall admit in writing its inability to pay its debts generally as they become due, or shall take corporate action in furtherance of any such action, or a decree or order for relief by a court having jurisdiction in the premises shall have been entered in respect of the Warrant Agent in an involuntary case under the Federal bankruptcy laws, as now or hereafter constituted, or any other applicable Federal or state bankruptcy, insolvency or similar law, or a decree or order by a court having jurisdiction in the premises shall have been entered for the appointment of a receiver, custodian, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator (or similar official) of the Warrant Agent or of its property or affairs, or any public officer shall take charge or control of the Warrant Agent or of its property or affairs for the purpose of rehabilitation, conservation, winding up or liquidation, a successor Warrant Agent, qualified as aforesaid, shall be appointed by the Company by an instrument in writing, filed with the successor Warrant Agent. Upon the appointment as aforesaid of a successor Warrant Agent and acceptance by the successor Warrant Agent of such appointment, the Warrant Agent shall cease to be Warrant Agent hereunder.

(d) Any successor Warrant Agent appointed hereunder shall execute, acknowledge and deliver to its predecessor and to the Company an instrument accepting such appointment hereunder, and thereupon such successor Warrant Agent, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the authority, rights, powers, trusts, immunities, duties and obligations of such predecessor with like effect as if originally named as Warrant Agent hereunder, and such predecessor, upon payment of its charges and disbursements then unpaid, shall thereupon become obligated to transfer, deliver and pay over, and such successor Warrant Agent shall be entitled to receive, all monies, securities and other property on deposit with or held by such predecessor, as Warrant Agent hereunder.

(e) Any corporation into which the Warrant Agent hereunder may be merged or converted or any corporation with which the Warrant Agent may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which the Warrant Agent shall be a party, or any corporation to which the Warrant Agent shall sell or otherwise transfer all or substantially all the assets and business of the Warrant Agent, provided that it shall be qualified as aforesaid, shall be the successor Warrant Agent under this Agreement without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of any of the parties hereto.

ARTICLE 6

MISCELLANEOUS

6.1 Amendment. This Agreement may be amended by the parties hereto, without the consent of the holder of any Warrant Certificate, for the purpose of curing any ambiguity, or of curing, correcting or supplementing any defective provision contained herein, or making any other provisions with respect to matters or questions arising under this Agreement as the

Company and the Warrant Agent may deem necessary or desirable; provided that such action shall not materially adversely affect the interests of the holders of the Warrant Certificates.

6.2 Notices And Demands To The Company And Warrant Agent. If the Warrant Agent shall receive any notice or demand addressed to the Company by the holder of a Warrant Certificate pursuant to the provisions of the Warrant Certificates, the Warrant Agent shall promptly forward such notice or demand to the Company.

6.3 Addresses. Any communication from the Company to the Warrant Agent with respect to this Agreement shall be addressed to _____, Attention: _____ and any communication from the Warrant Agent to the Company with respect to this Agreement shall be addressed to Aptevo Therapeutics Inc., 2401 4th Avenue, Suite 1050, Seattle, WA 98121, Attention: Chief Financial Officer (or such other address as shall be specified in writing by the Warrant Agent or by the Company).

6.4 Governing Law. This Agreement and each Warrant Certificate issued hereunder, and any claim, controversy or dispute arising under or related to this Agreement or any Warrant Certificate, shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of New York.

6.5 Delivery Of Prospectus. The Company shall furnish to the Warrant Agent sufficient copies of a prospectus meeting the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, relating to the Warrant Securities deliverable upon exercise of the Warrants (the "*Prospectus*"), and the Warrant Agent agrees that upon the exercise of any Warrant, the Warrant Agent will deliver to the holder of the Warrant Certificate evidencing such Warrant, prior to or concurrently with the delivery of the Warrant Securities issued upon such exercise, a Prospectus.

The Warrant Agent shall not, by reason of any such delivery, assume any responsibility for the accuracy or adequacy of such Prospectus.

6.6 Obtaining Of Governmental Approvals. The Company will from time to time take all action which may be necessary to obtain and keep effective any and all permits, consents and approvals of governmental agencies and authorities and securities act filings under United States Federal and state laws (including without limitation a registration statement in respect of the Warrants and Warrant Securities under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended), which may be or become requisite in connection with the issuance, sale, transfer, and delivery of the Warrant Securities issued upon exercise of the Warrants, the issuance, sale, transfer and delivery of the Warrants or upon the expiration of the period during which the Warrants are exercisable.

6.7 Persons Having Rights Under Warrant Agreement. Nothing in this Agreement shall give to any person other than the Company, the Warrant Agent and the holders of the Warrant Certificates any right, remedy or claim under or by reason of this Agreement.

6.8 Headings. The descriptive headings of the several Articles and Sections of this Agreement are inserted for convenience only and shall not control or affect the meaning or construction of any of the provisions hereof.

6.9 Counterparts. This Agreement may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which as so executed shall be deemed to be an original, but such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

6.10 Inspection Of Agreement. A copy of this Agreement shall be available at all reasonable times at the principal corporate trust office of the Warrant Agent for inspection by the holder of any Warrant Certificate. The Warrant Agent may require such holder to submit his Warrant Certificate for inspection by it.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Agreement to be duly executed, all as of the day and year first above written.

APTEVO THERAPEUTICS INC.

By: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

[WARRANT AGENT], as Warrant Agent

By: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

[SIGNATURE PAGE TO COMMON STOCK WARRANT AGREEMENT]

EXHIBIT A

**FORM OF WARRANT CERTIFICATE
[FACE OF WARRANT CERTIFICATE]**

[[Form if Warrants are attached to Other Securities and are not immediately detachable.]

[Prior to _____, this Warrant Certificate cannot be transferred or exchanged unless attached to a [Title of Other Securities].]

[Form of Legend if Warrants are not immediately exercisable.]

[Prior to _____, Warrants evidenced by this Warrant Certificate cannot be exercised.]

EXERCISABLE ONLY IF COUNTERSIGNED BY THE WARRANT AGENT AS PROVIDED HEREIN

VOID AFTER [] P.M., [] TIME, ON _____,

APTEVO THERAPEUTICS INC.
WARRANT CERTIFICATE REPRESENTING
WARRANTS TO PURCHASE
COMMON STOCK, PAR VALUE \$0.001 PER SHARE

No. _____

Warrants

This certifies that _____ or registered assigns is the registered owner of the above indicated number of Warrants, each Warrant entitling such owner [if Warrants are attached to Other Securities and are not immediately detachable—, subject to the registered owner qualifying as a “Holder” of this Warrant Certificate, as hereinafter defined),] to purchase, at any time [after [_____] p.m., [_____] time, [on _____ and] on or before [_____] p.m., [_____] time, on _____, _____ shares of Common Stock, par value \$0.001 per share (the “*Warrant Securities*”), of Aptevo Therapeutics Inc. (the “*Company*”) on the following basis: during the period from _____, through and including _____, the exercise price per Warrant Security will be \$_____, subject to adjustment as provided in the Warrant Agreement (as hereinafter defined) (the “*Warrant Price*”). The Holder may exercise the Warrants evidenced hereby by providing certain information set forth on the back hereof and by paying in full, in lawful money of the United States of America, [in cash or by certified check or official bank check in New York Clearing House funds] [by bank wire transfer in immediately available funds], the Warrant Price for each Warrant Security with respect to which this Warrant is exercised to the Warrant Agent (as hereinafter defined) and by surrendering this Warrant Certificate, with the purchase form on the back hereof duly executed, at the corporate trust office of [name of Warrant Agent], or its successor as warrant agent (the “*Warrant Agent*”), which is, on the date hereof, at the address specified on the reverse hereof, and upon compliance with and subject to the conditions set forth herein and in the Warrant Agreement (as hereinafter defined).

The term “*Holder*” as used herein shall mean [if Warrants are attached to Other Securities and are not immediately detachable—prior to _____, _____ (the “*Detachable Date*”), the registered owner of the Company’s [title of Other Securities] to which this Warrant Certificate was initially attached, and after such Detachable Date,] the person in whose name at the time this Warrant Certificate shall be registered upon the books to be maintained by the Warrant Agent for that purpose pursuant to Section 4 of the Warrant Agreement.

The Warrants evidenced by this Warrant Certificate may be exercised to purchase a whole number of Warrant Securities in registered form. Upon any exercise of fewer than all of the Warrants evidenced by this Warrant Certificate, there shall be issued to the Holder hereof a new Warrant Certificate evidencing Warrants for the number of Warrant Securities remaining unexercised.

This Warrant Certificate is issued under and in accordance with the Warrant Agreement dated as of _____, _____ (the “*Warrant Agreement*”), between the Company and the Warrant Agent and is subject to the terms and provisions contained in the Warrant Agreement, to all of which terms and provisions the Holder of this Warrant Certificate consents by acceptance hereof. Copies of the Warrant Agreement are on file at the above-mentioned office of the Warrant Agent.

DB1/ 117519074.2

[If Warrants are attached to Other Securities and are not immediately detachable - Prior to the Detachable Date, this Warrant Certificate may be exchanged or transferred only together with the [Title of Other Securities] (the “**Other Securities**”) to which this Warrant Certificate was initially attached, and only for the purpose of effecting or in conjunction with, an exchange or transfer of such Other Security. Additionally, on or prior to the Detachable Date, each transfer of such Other Security on the register of the Other Securities shall operate also to transfer this Warrant Certificate. After such date, transfer of this] [If Warrants are attached to Other Securities and are immediately detachable - Transfer of this] Warrant Certificate may be registered when this Warrant Certificate is surrendered at the corporate trust office of the Warrant Agent by the registered owner or such owner’s assigns, in the manner and subject to the limitations provided in the Warrant Agreement.

[If Other Securities with Warrants which are not immediately detachable - Except as provided in the immediately preceding paragraph, after] [If Other Securities with Warrants which are immediately detachable or Warrants alone - After] countersignature by the Warrant Agent and prior to the expiration of this Warrant Certificate, this Warrant Certificate may be exchanged at the corporate trust office of the Warrant Agent for Warrant Certificates representing Warrants for the same aggregate number of Warrant Securities.

This Warrant Certificate shall not entitle the Holder hereof to any of the rights of a holder of the Warrant Securities, including, without limitation, the right to receive payments of dividends or distributions, if any, on the Warrant Securities (except to the extent set forth in the Warrant Agreement) or to exercise any voting rights.

Reference is hereby made to the further provisions of this Warrant Certificate set forth on the reverse hereof, which further provisions shall for all purposes have the same effect as if set forth at this place.

This Warrant Certificate shall not be valid or obligatory for any purpose until countersigned by the Warrant Agent.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Company has caused this Warrant to be executed in its name and on its behalf by the facsimile signatures of its duly authorized officers.

Dated: _____

APTEVO THERAPEUTICS INC.

By: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

Countersigned:

[WARRANT AGENT], as Warrant Agent

By: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

[REVERSE OF WARRANT CERTIFICATE]

(Instructions for Exercise of Warrant)

To exercise any Warrants evidenced hereby for Warrant Securities (as hereinafter defined), the Holder must pay, in lawful money of the United States of America, [in cash or by certified check or official bank check in New York Clearing House funds] [by bank wire transfer in immediately available funds], the Warrant Price in full for Warrants exercised, to [Warrant Agent] [address of Warrant Agent], Attn: _____, which payment must specify the name of the Holder and the number of Warrants exercised by such Holder. In addition, the Holder must complete the information required below and present this Warrant Certificate in person or by mail (certified or registered mail is recommended) to the Warrant Agent at the appropriate address set forth above. This Warrant Certificate, completed and duly executed, must be received by the Warrant Agent within five business days of the payment.

(To be executed upon exercise of Warrants)

The undersigned hereby irrevocably elects to exercise _____ Warrants, evidenced by this Warrant Certificate, to purchase _____ shares of the Common Stock, par value \$0.001 per share (the "**Warrant Securities**"), of Aptevo Therapeutics Inc. and represents that he has tendered payment for such Warrant Securities, in lawful money of the United States of America, [in cash or by certified check or official bank check in New York Clearing House funds] [by bank wire transfer in immediately available funds], to the order of Aptevo Therapeutics Inc., c/o [insert name and address of Warrant Agent], in the amount of \$_____ in accordance with the terms hereof. The undersigned requests that said Warrant Securities be in fully registered form in the authorized denominations, registered in such names and delivered all as specified in accordance with the instructions set forth below.

If the number of Warrants exercised is less than all of the Warrants evidenced hereby, the undersigned requests that a new Warrant Certificate evidencing the Warrants for the number of Warrant Securities remaining unexercised be issued and delivered to the undersigned unless otherwise specified in the instructions below.

Dated _____

Name _____

Please Print _____

Address: _____

(Insert Social Security or Other Identifying Number of Holder)

Signature Guaranteed

Signature

(Signature must conform in all respects to name of holder as specified on the face of this Warrant Certificate and must bear a signature guarantee by a FINRA member firm).

This Warrant may be exercised at the following addresses:

By hand at

By mail at

[Instructions as to form and delivery of Warrant Securities and, if applicable, Warrant Certificates evidencing Warrants for the number of Warrant Securities remaining unexercised—complete as appropriate.]

DB1/ 117519074.2

ASSIGNMENT

[Form of assignment to be executed if Warrant Holder desires to transfer Warrant]

FOR VALUE RECEIVED, _____ hereby sells, assigns and transfers unto:

(Please print name and address including zip code)

Please print Social Security or other identifying number

the right represented by the within Warrant to purchase _____ shares of [Title of Warrant Securities] of Aptevo Therapeutics Inc. to which the within Warrant relates and appoints _____ attorney to transfer such right on the books of the Warrant Agent with full power of substitution in the premises.

Dated _____

Signature _____

(Signature must conform in all respects to name of holder as specified on the face of the Warrant)

Signature Guaranteed

APTEVO THERAPEUTICS INC.

AND

_____, AS WARRANT AGENT
FORM OF PREFERRED STOCK
WARRANT AGREEMENT

DATED AS OF [__], 20__

APTEVO THERAPEUTICS INC.
FORM OF PREFERRED STOCK WARRANT AGREEMENT

PREFERRED STOCK WARRANT AGREEMENT (this “*Agreement*”), dated as of _____ between **APTEVO THERAPEUTICS INC.**, a Delaware corporation (the “*Company*”), and _____, a [corporation] [national banking association] organized and existing under the laws of _____ and having a corporate trust office in _____, as warrant agent (the “*Warrant Agent*”).

WHEREAS, the Company proposes to sell [if Warrants are sold with other securities - [title of such other securities being offered] (the “*Other Securities*”) with] warrant certificates evidencing one or more warrants (the “*Warrants*” or, individually, a “*Warrant*”) representing the right to purchase [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants] (the “*Warrant Securities*”), such warrant certificates and other warrant certificates issued pursuant to this Agreement being herein called the “*Warrant Certificates*,” and

WHEREAS, the Company desires the Warrant Agent to act on behalf of the Company, and the Warrant Agent is willing so to act, in connection with the issuance, registration, transfer, exchange, exercise and replacement of the Warrant Certificates, and in this Agreement wishes to set forth, among other things, the form and provisions of the Warrant Certificates and the terms and conditions on which they may be issued, registered, transferred, exchanged, exercised and replaced.

NOW THEREFORE, in consideration of the premises and of the mutual agreements herein contained, the parties hereto agree as follows:

ARTICLE 1

ISSUANCE OF WARRANTS AND EXECUTION AND DELIVERY OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES

1.1 Issuance of Warrants. [If Warrants alone - Upon issuance, each Warrant Certificate shall evidence one or more Warrants.] [If Other Securities and Warrants – Warrant Certificates shall be [initially] issued in connection with the issuance of the Other Securities [but shall be separately transferable on and after _____ (the “*Detachable Date*”)] [and shall not be separately transferable] and each Warrant Certificate shall evidence one or more Warrants.] Each Warrant evidenced thereby shall represent the right, subject to the provisions contained herein and therein, to purchase one Warrant Security. [If Other Securities and Warrants - Warrant Certificates shall be initially issued in units with the Other Securities and each Warrant Certificate included in such a unit shall evidence _____ Warrants for each [\$_____ principal amount] [____ shares] of Other Securities included in such unit.]

1.2 Execution And Delivery Of Warrant Certificates. Each Warrant Certificate, whenever issued, shall be in registered form substantially in the form set forth in **Exhibit A** hereto, shall be dated the date of its countersignature by the Warrant Agent and may have such letters, numbers, or other marks of identification or designation and such legends or endorsements printed,

lithographed or engraved thereon as the officers of the Company executing the same may approve (execution thereof to be conclusive evidence of such approval) and as are not inconsistent with the provisions of this Agreement, or as may be required to comply with any law or with any rule or regulation made pursuant thereto or with any rule or regulation of any securities exchange on which the Warrants may be listed, or to conform to usage. The Warrant Certificates shall be signed on behalf of the Company by any of its present or future chief executive officers, presidents, senior vice presidents, vice presidents, chief financial officers, chief legal officers, treasurers, assistant treasurers, controllers, assistant controllers, secretaries or assistant secretaries under its corporate seal reproduced thereon. Such signatures may be manual or facsimile signatures of such authorized officers and may be imprinted or otherwise reproduced on the Warrant Certificates. The seal of the Company may be in the form of a facsimile thereof and may be impressed, affixed, imprinted or otherwise reproduced on the Warrant Certificates.

No Warrant Certificate shall be valid for any purpose, and no Warrant evidenced thereby shall be exercisable, until such Warrant Certificate has been countersigned by the manual signature of the Warrant Agent. Such signature by the Warrant Agent upon any Warrant Certificate executed by the Company shall be conclusive evidence that the Warrant Certificate so countersigned has been duly issued hereunder.

In case any officer of the Company who shall have signed any of the Warrant Certificates either manually or by facsimile signature shall cease to be such officer before the Warrant Certificates so signed shall have been countersigned and delivered by the Warrant Agent, such Warrant Certificates may be countersigned and delivered notwithstanding that the person who signed Warrant Certificates ceased to be such officer of the Company; and any Warrant Certificate may be signed on behalf of the Company by such persons as, at the actual date of the execution of such Warrant Certificate, shall be the proper officers of the Company, although at the date of the execution of this Agreement any such person was not such officer.

The term “holder” or “holder of a Warrant Certificate” as used herein shall mean any person in whose name at the time any Warrant Certificate shall be registered upon the books to be maintained by the Warrant Agent for that purpose [If Other Securities and Warrants are not immediately detachable—or upon the registration of the Other Securities prior to the Detachable Date. Prior to the Detachable Date, the Company will, or will cause the registrar of the Other Securities to, make available at all times to the Warrant Agent such information as to holders of the Other Securities as may be necessary to keep the Warrant Agent’s records up to date].

1.3 Issuance Of Warrant Certificates. Warrant Certificates evidencing the right to purchase Warrant Securities may be executed by the Company and delivered to the Warrant Agent upon the execution of this Warrant Agreement or from time to time thereafter. The Warrant Agent shall, upon receipt of Warrant Certificates duly executed on behalf of the Company, countersign such Warrant Certificates and shall deliver such Warrant Certificates to or upon the order of the Company.

ARTICLE 2

WARRANT PRICE, DURATION AND EXERCISE OF WARRANTS

2.1 Warrant Price. During the period specified in Section 2.2, each Warrant shall, subject to the terms of this Warrant Agreement and the applicable Warrant Certificate, entitle the holder thereof to purchase the number of Warrant Securities specified in the applicable Warrant Certificate at an exercise price of \$_____ per Warrant Security, subject to adjustment upon the occurrence of certain events, as hereinafter provided. Such purchase price per Warrant Security is referred to in this Agreement as the “*Warrant Price*.”

2.2 Duration Of Warrants. Each Warrant may be exercised in whole or in part at any time, as specified herein, on or after [the date thereof] [_____] and at or before [_____] p.m., [_____] time, on _____ or such later date as the Company may designate by notice to the Warrant Agent and the holders of Warrant Certificates mailed to their addresses as set forth in the record books of the Warrant Agent (the “*Expiration Date*”). Each Warrant not exercised at or before [_____] p.m., [_____] time, on the Expiration Date shall become void, and all rights of the holder of the Warrant Certificate evidencing such Warrant under this Agreement shall cease.

2.3 Exercise Of Warrants.

(a) During the period specified in Section 2.2, the Warrants may be exercised to purchase a whole number of Warrant Securities in registered form by providing certain information as set forth on the reverse side of the Warrant Certificate and by paying in full, in lawful money of the United States of America, [in cash or by certified check or official bank check in New York Clearing House funds] [by bank wire transfer in immediately available funds] the Warrant Price for each Warrant Security with respect to which a Warrant is being exercised to the Warrant Agent at its corporate trust office, provided that such exercise is subject to receipt within five business days of such payment by the Warrant Agent of the Warrant Certificate with the form of election to purchase Warrant Securities set forth on the reverse side of the Warrant Certificate properly completed and duly executed. The date on which payment in full of the Warrant Price is received by the Warrant Agent shall, subject to receipt of the Warrant Certificate as aforesaid, be deemed to be the date on which the Warrant is exercised; provided, however, that if, at the date of receipt of such Warrant Certificates and payment in full of the Warrant Price, the transfer books for the Warrant Securities purchasable upon the exercise of such Warrants shall be closed, no such receipt of such Warrant Certificates and no such payment of such Warrant Price shall be effective to constitute the person so designated to be named as the holder of record of such Warrant Securities on such date, but shall be effective to constitute such person as the holder of record of such Warrant Securities for all purposes at the opening of business on the next succeeding day on which the transfer books for the Warrant Securities purchasable upon the exercise of such Warrants shall be opened, and the certificates for the Warrant Securities in respect of which such Warrants are then exercised shall be issuable as of the date on such next succeeding day on which the transfer books shall next be opened, and until such date the Company shall be under no duty to deliver any certificate for such Warrant Securities. The Warrant Agent shall deposit all funds received by it in payment of the Warrant Price in an account of the Company maintained with it and shall advise

the Company by telephone at the end of each day on which a payment for the exercise of Warrants is received of the amount so deposited to its account. The Warrant Agent shall promptly confirm such telephone advice to the Company in writing.

(b) The Warrant Agent shall, from time to time, as promptly as practicable, advise the Company of (i) the number of Warrant Securities with respect to which Warrants were exercised, (ii) the instructions of each holder of the Warrant Certificates evidencing such Warrants with respect to delivery of the Warrant Securities to which such holder is entitled upon such exercise, (iii) delivery of Warrant Certificates evidencing the balance, if any, of the Warrants for the remaining Warrant Securities after such exercise, and (iv) such other information as the Company shall reasonably require.

(c) As soon as practicable after the exercise of any Warrant, the Company shall issue to or upon the order of the holder of the Warrant Certificate evidencing such Warrant the Warrant Securities to which such holder is entitled, in fully registered form, registered in such name or names as may be directed by such holder. If fewer than all of the Warrants evidenced by such Warrant Certificate are exercised, the Company shall execute, and an authorized officer of the Warrant Agent shall manually countersign and deliver, a new Warrant Certificate evidencing Warrants for the number of Warrant Securities remaining unexercised.

(d) The Company shall not be required to pay any stamp or other tax or other governmental charge required to be paid in connection with any transfer involved in the issue of the Warrant Securities, and in the event that any such transfer is involved, the Company shall not be required to issue or deliver any Warrant Security until such tax or other charge shall have been paid or it has been established to the Company's satisfaction that no such tax or other charge is due.

(e) Prior to the issuance of any Warrants there shall have been reserved, and the Company shall at all times through the Expiration Date keep reserved, out of its authorized but unissued Warrant Securities, a number of shares sufficient to provide for the exercise of the Warrants.

ARTICLE 3

OTHER PROVISIONS RELATING TO RIGHTS OF HOLDERS OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES

3.1 No Rights As Warrant Securityholder Conferred By Warrants or Warrant Certificates. No Warrant Certificate or Warrant evidenced thereby shall entitle the holder thereof to any of the rights of a holder of Warrant Securities, including, without limitation, the right to receive the payment of dividends or distributions, if any, on the Warrant Securities or to exercise any voting rights, except to the extent expressly set forth in this Agreement or the applicable Warrant Certificate.

3.2 Lost, Stolen, Mutilated or Destroyed Warrant Certificates. Upon receipt by the Warrant Agent of evidence reasonably satisfactory to it and the Company of the ownership of and the loss, theft, destruction or mutilation of any Warrant Certificate and/or indemnity reasonably

satisfactory to the Warrant Agent and the Company and, in the case of mutilation, upon surrender of the mutilated Warrant Certificate to the Warrant Agent for cancellation, then, in the absence of notice to the Company or the Warrant Agent that such Warrant Certificate has been acquired by a bona fide purchaser, the Company shall execute, and an authorized officer of the Warrant Agent shall manually countersign and deliver, in exchange for or in lieu of the lost, stolen, destroyed or mutilated Warrant Certificate, a new Warrant Certificate of the same tenor and evidencing Warrants for a like number of Warrant Securities. Upon the issuance of any new Warrant Certificate under this Section 3.2, the Company may require the payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto and any other expenses (including the fees and expenses of the Warrant Agent) in connection therewith. Every substitute Warrant Certificate executed and delivered pursuant to this Section 3.2 in lieu of any lost, stolen or destroyed Warrant Certificate shall represent an additional contractual obligation of the Company, whether or not the lost, stolen or destroyed Warrant Certificate shall be at any time enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to the benefits of this Agreement equally and proportionately with any and all other Warrant Certificates duly executed and delivered hereunder. The provisions of this Section 3.2 are exclusive and shall preclude (to the extent lawful) all other rights and remedies with respect to the replacement of mutilated, lost, stolen or destroyed Warrant Certificates.

3.3 Holder of Warrant Certificate May Enforce Rights. Notwithstanding any of the provisions of this Agreement, any holder of a Warrant Certificate, without the consent of the Warrant Agent, the holder of any Warrant Securities or the holder of any other Warrant Certificate, may, in such holder's own behalf and for such holder's own benefit, enforce, and may institute and maintain any suit, action or proceeding against the Company suitable to enforce, or otherwise in respect of, such holder's right to exercise the Warrants evidenced by such holder's Warrant Certificate in the manner provided in such holder's Warrant Certificate and in this Agreement.

3.4 Adjustments.

(a) In case the Company shall at any time subdivide its outstanding shares of [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants] into a greater number of shares, the Warrant Price in effect immediately prior to such subdivision shall be proportionately reduced and the number of Warrant Securities purchasable under the Warrants shall be proportionately increased. Conversely, in case the outstanding shares of [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants] of the Company shall be combined into a smaller number of shares, the Warrant Price in effect immediately prior to such combination shall be proportionately increased and the number of Warrant Securities purchasable under the Warrants shall be proportionately decreased.

(b) If at any time or from time to time the holders of [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants] (or any shares of stock or other securities at the time receivable upon the exercise of the Warrants) shall have received or become entitled to receive, without payment therefore,

(i) [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants] or any shares of stock or other securities which are at any time directly or indirectly convertible into or exchangeable for [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants], or

any rights or options to subscribe for, purchase or otherwise acquire any of the foregoing by way of dividend or other distribution;

(ii) any cash paid or payable otherwise than in accordance with the terms of [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants] or otherwise than as a cash dividend paid or payable out of the Company's current or retained earnings;

(iii) any evidence of the Company's indebtedness or rights to subscribe for or purchase the Company's indebtedness; or

(iv) [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants] or additional stock or other securities or property (including cash) by way of spinoff, split-up, reclassification, combination of shares or similar corporate rearrangement (other than shares of [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants] issued as a stock split or adjustments in respect of which shall be covered by the terms of Section 3.4(a) above), then and in each such case, the holder of each Warrant shall, upon the exercise of the Warrant, be entitled to receive, in addition to the number of Warrant Securities receivable thereupon, and without payment of any additional consideration therefore, the amount of stock and other securities and property (including cash and indebtedness or rights to subscribe for or purchase indebtedness) which such holder would hold on the date of such exercise had he been the holder of record of such Warrant Securities as of the date on which holders of [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants] received or became entitled to receive such shares or all other additional stock and other securities and property.

(c) In case of (i) any reclassification, capital reorganization, or change in the [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through the exercise of the Warrants] of the Company (other than as a result of a subdivision, combination or stock dividend provided for in Section 3.4(a) or Section 3.4(b) above), (ii) share exchange, merger or similar transaction of the Company with or into another person or entity (other than a share exchange, merger or similar transaction in which the Company is the acquiring or surviving corporation and which does not result in any change in the [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through the exercise of the Warrants] other than the issuance of additional shares of [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through the exercise of the Warrants]) or (iii) the sale, exchange, lease, transfer or other disposition of all or substantially all of the properties and assets of the Company as an entirety (in any such case, a "**Reorganization Event**"), then, as a condition of such Reorganization Event, lawful provisions shall be made, and duly executed documents evidencing the same from the Company or its successor shall be delivered to the holders of the Warrants, so that the holders of the Warrants shall have the right at any time prior to the expiration of the Warrants to purchase, at a total price equal to that payable upon the exercise of the Warrants, the kind and amount of shares of stock and other securities and property receivable in connection with such Reorganization Event by a holder of the same number of shares of [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through the exercise of the Warrants] as were purchasable by the holders of the Warrants immediately prior to such Reorganization Event. In any such case appropriate provisions shall be made with respect to the rights and interests of the holders of the Warrants so that the provisions hereof shall thereafter be applicable with respect to any shares of stock or other securities and property deliverable upon exercise the Warrants, and appropriate adjustments shall be made to the Warrant Price payable hereunder provided the aggregate purchase price shall remain the same. In the case of any transaction described in clauses

(ii) and (iii) above, the Company shall thereupon be relieved of any further obligation hereunder or under the Warrants, and the Company as the predecessor corporation may thereupon or at any time thereafter be dissolved, wound up or liquidated. Such successor or assuming entity thereupon may cause to be signed, and may issue either in its own name or in the name of the Company, any or all of the Warrants issuable hereunder which heretofore shall not have been signed by the Company, and may execute and deliver securities in its own name, in fulfillment of its obligations to deliver Warrant Securities upon exercise of the Warrants. All the Warrants so issued shall in all respects have the same legal rank and benefit under this Agreement as the Warrants theretofore or thereafter issued in accordance with the terms of this Agreement as though all of such Warrants had been issued at the date of the execution hereof. In any case of any such Reorganization Event, such changes in phraseology and form (but not in substance) may be made in the Warrants thereafter to be issued as may be appropriate. The Warrant Agent may receive a written opinion of legal counsel as conclusive evidence that any such Reorganization Event complies with the provisions of this Section 3.4.

(d) The Company may, at its option, at any time until the Expiration Date, reduce the then current Warrant Price to any amount deemed appropriate by the Board of Directors of the Company for any period not exceeding twenty consecutive days (as evidenced in a resolution adopted by such Board of Directors), but only upon giving the notices required by Section 3.5 at least ten days prior to taking such action.

(e) Except as herein otherwise expressly provided, no adjustment in the Warrant Price shall be made by reason of the issuance of any securities of the Company or for any other reason whatsoever.

(f) No fractional Warrant Securities shall be issued upon the exercise of Warrants. If more than one Warrant shall be exercised at one time by the same holder, the number of full Warrant Securities which shall be issuable upon such exercise shall be computed on the basis of the aggregate number of Warrant Securities purchased pursuant to the Warrants so exercised. Instead of any fractional Warrant Security which would otherwise be issuable upon exercise of any Warrant, the Company shall pay a cash adjustment in respect of such fraction in an amount equal to the same fraction of the last sales price (or bid price if there were no sales) per Warrant Security, in either case as reported on the principal registered national securities exchange on which the Warrant Securities are listed or admitted to trading on the business day that next precedes the day of exercise or, if the Warrant Securities are not then listed or admitted to trading on any registered national securities exchange, the average of the closing high bid and low asked prices as reported on the OTC Bulletin Board Service (the "**OTC Bulletin Board**") operated by the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, Inc. ("**FINRA**") or, if not available on the OTC Bulletin Board, then the average of the closing high bid and low asked prices as reported on any other U.S. quotation medium or inter-dealer quotation system on such date, or if on any such date the Warrant Securities are not listed or admitted to trading on a registered national securities exchange, are not included in the OTC Bulletin Board, and are not quoted on any other U.S. quotation medium or inter-dealer quotation system, an amount equal to the same fraction of the average of the closing bid and asked prices as furnished by any FINRA member firm selected from time to time by the Company for that purpose at the close of business on the business day that next precedes the day of exercise.

(g) Whenever the Warrant Price then in effect is adjusted as herein provided, the Company shall mail to each holder of the Warrants at such holder's address as it shall appear on the books of the Company a statement setting forth the adjusted Warrant Price then and thereafter effective under the provisions hereof, together with the facts, in reasonable detail, upon which such adjustment is based.

(h) Notwithstanding anything to the contrary herein, in no event shall the Warrant Price, as adjusted in accordance with the terms hereof, be less than the par value per share of [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants].

3.5 Notice to Warrantholders. In case the Company shall (a) effect any dividend or distribution described in Section 3.4(b), (b) effect any Reorganization Event, (c) make any distribution on or in respect of the [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through the exercise of the Warrants] in connection with the dissolution, liquidation or winding up of the Company, or (d) reduce the then current Warrant Price pursuant to Section 3.4(d), then the Company shall mail to each holder of Warrants at such holder's address as it shall appear on the books of the Warrant Agent, at least ten days prior to the applicable date hereinafter specified, a notice stating (x) the record date for such dividend or distribution, or, if a record is not to be taken, the date as of which the holders of record of [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through the exercise of Warrants] that will be entitled to such dividend or distribution are to be determined, (y) the date on which such Reorganization Event, dissolution, liquidation or winding up is expected to become effective, and the date as of which it is expected that holders of [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through the exercise of the Warrants] of record shall be entitled to exchange their shares of [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through the exercise of the Warrants] for securities or other property deliverable upon such Reorganization Event, dissolution, liquidation or winding up, or (z) the first date on which the then current Warrant Price shall be reduced pursuant to Section 3.4(d). No failure to mail such notice nor any defect therein or in the mailing thereof shall affect any such transaction or any adjustment in the Warrant Price required by Section 3.4.

3.6 [IF THE WARRANTS ARE SUBJECT TO ACCELERATION BY THE COMPANY, INSERT—ACCELERATION OF WARRANTS BY THE COMPANY.]

(a) At any time on or after _____, the Company shall have the right to accelerate any or all Warrants at any time by causing them to expire at the close of business on the day next preceding a specified date (the "**Acceleration Date**"), if the Market Price (as hereinafter defined) of the [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through the exercise of the Warrants] equals or exceeds _____ percent (____%) of the then effective Warrant Price on any twenty Trading Days (as hereinafter defined) within a period of thirty consecutive Trading Days ending no more than five Trading Days prior to the date on which the Company gives notice to the Warrant Agent of its election to accelerate the Warrants.

(b) "**Market Price**" for each Trading Day shall be, if the [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through the exercise of the Warrants] is listed or admitted to trading on any registered national securities exchange, the last reported sale price, regular way (or, if no such price is reported, the average of the reported closing bid and asked prices, regular way) of [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through the exercise of the Warrants], in either case as reported on the principal registered national securities exchange on which the [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through

the exercise of the Warrants] is listed or admitted to trading or, if not listed or admitted to trading on any registered national securities exchange, the average of the closing high bid and low asked prices as reported on the OTC Bulletin Board operated by FINRA, or if not available on the OTC Bulletin Board, then the average of the closing high bid and low asked prices as reported on any other U.S. quotation medium or inter-dealer quotation system, or if on any such date the shares of [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through the exercise of the Warrants] are not listed or admitted to trading on a registered national securities exchange, are not included in the OTC Bulletin Board, and are not quoted on any other U.S. quotation medium or inter-dealer quotation system, the average of the closing bid and asked prices as furnished by any FINRA member firm selected from time to time by the Company for that purpose. “*Trading Day*” shall be each Monday through Friday, other than any day on which securities are not traded in the system or on the exchange that is the principal market for the [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through the exercise of the Warrants], as determined by the Board of Directors of the Company.

(c) In the event of an acceleration of less than all of the Warrants, the Warrant Agent shall select the Warrants to be accelerated by lot, pro rata or in such other manner as it deems, in its discretion, to be fair and appropriate.

(d) Notice of an acceleration specifying the Acceleration Date shall be sent by mail first class, postage prepaid, to each registered holder of a Warrant Certificate representing a Warrant accelerated at such holder’s address appearing on the books of the Warrant Agent not more than sixty days nor less than thirty days before the Acceleration Date. Such notice of an acceleration also shall be given no more than twenty days, and no less than ten days, prior to the mailing of notice to registered holders of Warrants pursuant to this Section 3.6, by publication at least once in a newspaper of general circulation in the City of New York.

(e) Any Warrant accelerated may be exercised until [_____] p.m., [_____] time, on the business day next preceding the Acceleration Date. The Warrant Price shall be payable as provided in Section 2.]

ARTICLE 4

EXCHANGE AND TRANSFER OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES

4.1 Exchange and Transfer of Warrant Certificates. [If Other Securities with Warrants which are immediately detachable—Upon] [If Other Securities with Warrants which are not immediately detachable—Prior to the Detachable Date, a Warrant Certificate may be exchanged or transferred only together with the Other Security to which the Warrant Certificate was initially attached, and only for the purpose of effecting or in conjunction with an exchange or transfer of such Other Security. Prior to any Detachable Date, each transfer of the Other Security shall operate also to transfer the related Warrant Certificates. After the Detachable Date, upon] surrender at the corporate trust office of the Warrant Agent, Warrant Certificates evidencing Warrants may be exchanged for Warrant Certificates in other denominations evidencing such Warrants or the transfer thereof may be registered in whole or in part; provided that such other Warrant Certificates evidence Warrants for the same aggregate number of Warrant Securities as the Warrant Certificates so surrendered. The Warrant Agent shall keep, at its corporate trust office, books in which, subject to such reasonable regulations as it may prescribe, it shall register Warrant

Certificates and exchanges and transfers of outstanding Warrant Certificates, upon surrender of the Warrant Certificates to the Warrant Agent at its corporate trust office for exchange or registration of transfer, properly endorsed or accompanied by appropriate instruments of registration of transfer and written instructions for transfer, all in form satisfactory to the Company and the Warrant Agent. No service charge shall be made for any exchange or registration of transfer of Warrant Certificates, but the Company may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any stamp or other tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in connection with any such exchange or registration of transfer. Whenever any Warrant Certificates are so surrendered for exchange or registration of transfer, an authorized officer of the Warrant Agent shall manually countersign and deliver to the person or persons entitled thereto a Warrant Certificate or Warrant Certificates duly authorized and executed by the Company, as so requested. The Warrant Agent shall not be required to effect any exchange or registration of transfer which will result in the issuance of a Warrant Certificate evidencing a Warrant for a fraction of a Warrant Security or a number of Warrants for a whole number of Warrant Securities and a fraction of a Warrant Security. All Warrant Certificates issued upon any exchange or registration of transfer of Warrant Certificates shall be the valid obligations of the Company, evidencing the same obligations and entitled to the same benefits under this Agreement as the Warrant Certificate surrendered for such exchange or registration of transfer.

4.2 Treatment of Holders of Warrant Certificates. [If Other Securities and Warrants are not immediately detachable—Prior to the Detachable Date, the Company, the Warrant Agent and all other persons may treat the owner of the Other Security as the owner of the Warrant Certificates initially attached thereto for any purpose and as the person entitled to exercise the rights represented by the Warrants evidenced by such Warrant Certificates, any notice to the contrary notwithstanding. After the Detachable Date and prior to due presentment of a Warrant Certificate for registration of transfer, the] [The] Company, the Warrant Agent and all other persons may treat the registered holder of a Warrant Certificate as the absolute owner thereof for any purpose and as the person entitled to exercise the rights represented by the Warrants evidenced thereby, any notice to the contrary notwithstanding.

4.3 Cancellation of Warrant Certificates. Any Warrant Certificate surrendered for exchange, registration of transfer or exercise of the Warrants evidenced thereby shall, if surrendered to the Company, be delivered to the Warrant Agent and all Warrant Certificates surrendered or so delivered to the Warrant Agent shall be promptly canceled by the Warrant Agent and shall not be reissued and, except as expressly permitted by this Agreement, no Warrant Certificate shall be issued hereunder in exchange therefor or in lieu thereof. The Warrant Agent shall deliver to the Company from time to time or otherwise dispose of canceled Warrant Certificates in a manner satisfactory to the Company.

ARTICLE 5

CONCERNING THE WARRANT AGENT

5.1 Warrant Agent. The Company hereby appoints _____ as Warrant Agent of the Company in respect of the Warrants and the Warrant Certificates upon the terms and subject to the conditions herein set forth, and _____ hereby accepts such appointment. The Warrant Agent shall have the powers and authority granted to and conferred upon it in the

Warrant Certificates and hereby and such further powers and authority to act on behalf of the Company as the Company may hereafter grant to or confer upon it. All of the terms and provisions with respect to such powers and authority contained in the Warrant Certificates are subject to and governed by the terms and provisions hereof.

5.2 Conditions of Warrant Agent's Obligations. The Warrant Agent accepts its obligations herein set forth upon the terms and conditions hereof, including the following to all of which the Company agrees and to all of which the rights hereunder of the holders from time to time of the Warrant Certificates shall be subject:

(a) **Compensation and Indemnification.** The Company agrees promptly to pay the Warrant Agent the compensation to be agreed upon with the Company for all services rendered by the Warrant Agent and to reimburse the Warrant Agent for reasonable out-of-pocket expenses (including reasonable counsel fees) incurred without negligence, bad faith or willful misconduct by the Warrant Agent in connection with the services rendered hereunder by the Warrant Agent. The Company also agrees to indemnify the Warrant Agent for, and to hold it harmless against, any loss, liability or expense incurred without negligence, bad faith or willful misconduct on the part of the Warrant Agent, arising out of or in connection with its acting as Warrant Agent hereunder, including the reasonable costs and expenses of defending against any claim of such liability.

(b) **Agent for the Company.** In acting under this Warrant Agreement and in connection with the Warrant Certificates, the Warrant Agent is acting solely as agent of the Company and does not assume any obligations or relationship of agency or trust for or with any of the holders of Warrant Certificates or beneficial owners of Warrants.

(c) **Counsel.** The Warrant Agent may consult with counsel satisfactory to it, which may include counsel for the Company, and the written advice of such counsel shall be full and complete authorization and protection in respect of any action taken, suffered or omitted by it hereunder in good faith and in accordance with the advice of such counsel.

(d) **Documents.** The Warrant Agent shall be protected and shall incur no liability for or in respect of any action taken or omitted by it in reliance upon any Warrant Certificate, notice, direction, consent, certificate, affidavit, statement or other paper or document reasonably believed by it to be genuine and to have been presented or signed by the proper parties.

(e) **Certain Transactions.** The Warrant Agent, and its officers, directors and employees, may become the owner of, or acquire any interest in, Warrants, with the same rights that it or they would have if it were not the Warrant Agent hereunder, and, to the extent permitted by applicable law, it or they may engage or be interested in any financial or other transaction with the Company and may act on, or as depository, trustee or agent for, any committee or body of holders of Warrant Securities or other obligations of the Company as freely as if it were not the Warrant Agent hereunder. Nothing in this Warrant Agreement shall be deemed to prevent the Warrant Agent from acting as trustee under any indenture to which the Company is a party.

(f) No Liability for Interest. Unless otherwise agreed with the Company, the Warrant Agent shall have no liability for interest on any monies at any time received by it pursuant to any of the provisions of this Agreement or of the Warrant Certificates.

(g) No Liability for Invalidity. The Warrant Agent shall have no liability with respect to any invalidity of this Agreement or any of the Warrant Certificates (except as to the Warrant Agent's countersignature thereon).

(h) No Responsibility for Representations. The Warrant Agent shall not be responsible for any of the recitals or representations herein or in the Warrant Certificates (except as to the Warrant Agent's countersignature thereon), all of which are made solely by the Company.

(i) No Implied Obligations. The Warrant Agent shall be obligated to perform only such duties as are herein and in the Warrant Certificates specifically set forth and no implied duties or obligations shall be read into this Agreement or the Warrant Certificates against the Warrant Agent. The Warrant Agent shall not be under any obligation to take any action hereunder which may tend to involve it in any expense or liability, the payment of which within a reasonable time is not, in its reasonable opinion, assured to it. The Warrant Agent shall not be accountable or under any duty or responsibility for the use by the Company of any of the Warrant Certificates authenticated by the Warrant Agent and delivered by it to the Company pursuant to this Agreement or for the application by the Company of the proceeds of the Warrant Certificates. The Warrant Agent shall have no duty or responsibility in case of any default by the Company in the performance of its covenants or agreements contained herein or in the Warrant Certificates or in the case of the receipt of any written demand from a holder of a Warrant Certificate with respect to such default, including, without limiting the generality of the foregoing, any duty or responsibility to initiate or attempt to initiate any proceedings at law or otherwise or, except as provided in Section 6.2 hereof, to make any demand upon the Company.

5.3 Resignation, Removal and Appointment of Successors.

(a) The Company agrees, for the benefit of the holders from time to time of the Warrant Certificates, that there shall at all times be a Warrant Agent hereunder until all the Warrants have been exercised or are no longer exercisable.

(b) The Warrant Agent may at any time resign as agent by giving written notice to the Company of such intention on its part, specifying the date on which its desired resignation shall become effective; provided that such date shall not be less than three months after the date on which such notice is given unless the Company otherwise agrees. The Warrant Agent hereunder may be removed at any time by the filing with it of an instrument in writing signed by or on behalf of the Company and specifying such removal and the intended date when it shall become effective. Such resignation or removal shall take effect upon the appointment by the Company, as hereinafter provided, of a successor Warrant Agent (which shall be a bank or trust company authorized under the laws of the jurisdiction of its organization to exercise corporate trust powers) and the acceptance of such appointment by such successor Warrant Agent. The obligation of the Company under Section 5.2(a) shall continue to the extent set forth therein notwithstanding the resignation or removal of the Warrant Agent.

(c) In case at any time the Warrant Agent shall resign, or shall be removed, or shall become incapable of acting, or shall be adjudged a bankrupt or insolvent, or shall commence a voluntary case under the Federal bankruptcy laws, as now or hereafter constituted, or under any other applicable Federal or state bankruptcy, insolvency or similar law or shall consent to the appointment of or taking possession by a receiver, custodian, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator (or other similar official) of the Warrant Agent or its property or affairs, or shall make an assignment for the benefit of creditors, or shall admit in writing its inability to pay its debts generally as they become due, or shall take corporate action in furtherance of any such action, or a decree or order for relief by a court having jurisdiction in the premises shall have been entered in respect of the Warrant Agent in an involuntary case under the Federal bankruptcy laws, as now or hereafter constituted, or any other applicable Federal or state bankruptcy, insolvency or similar law, or a decree or order by a court having jurisdiction in the premises shall have been entered for the appointment of a receiver, custodian, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator (or similar official) of the Warrant Agent or of its property or affairs, or any public officer shall take charge or control of the Warrant Agent or of its property or affairs for the purpose of rehabilitation, conservation, winding up or liquidation, a successor Warrant Agent, qualified as aforesaid, shall be appointed by the Company by an instrument in writing, filed with the successor Warrant Agent. Upon the appointment as aforesaid of a successor Warrant Agent and acceptance by the successor Warrant Agent of such appointment, the Warrant Agent shall cease to be Warrant Agent hereunder.

(d) Any successor Warrant Agent appointed hereunder shall execute, acknowledge and deliver to its predecessor and to the Company an instrument accepting such appointment hereunder, and thereupon such successor Warrant Agent, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the authority, rights, powers, trusts, immunities, duties and obligations of such predecessor with like effect as if originally named as Warrant Agent hereunder, and such predecessor, upon payment of its charges and disbursements then unpaid, shall thereupon become obligated to transfer, deliver and pay over, and such successor Warrant Agent shall be entitled to receive, all monies, securities and other property on deposit with or held by such predecessor, as Warrant Agent hereunder.

(e) Any corporation into which the Warrant Agent hereunder may be merged or converted or any corporation with which the Warrant Agent may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which the Warrant Agent shall be a party, or any corporation to which the Warrant Agent shall sell or otherwise transfer all or substantially all the assets and business of the Warrant Agent, provided that it shall be qualified as aforesaid, shall be the successor Warrant Agent under this Agreement without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of any of the parties hereto.

ARTICLE 6

MISCELLANEOUS

6.1 Amendment. This Agreement may be amended by the parties hereto, without the consent of the holder of any Warrant Certificate, for the purpose of curing any ambiguity, or of curing, correcting or supplementing any defective provision contained herein, or making any other provisions with respect to matters or questions arising under this Agreement as the Company and

the Warrant Agent may deem necessary or desirable; provided that such action shall not materially adversely affect the interests of the holders of the Warrant Certificates.

6.2 Notices and Demands to the Company and Warrant Agent. If the Warrant Agent shall receive any notice or demand addressed to the Company by the holder of a Warrant Certificate pursuant to the provisions of the Warrant Certificates, the Warrant Agent shall promptly forward such notice or demand to the Company.

6.3 Addresses. Any communication from the Company to the Warrant Agent with respect to this Agreement shall be addressed to _____, Attention: _____ and any communication from the Warrant Agent to the Company with respect to this Agreement shall be addressed to Aptevo Therapeutics Inc., 2401 4th Avenue, Suite 1050, Seattle, WA 98121, Attention: Chief Financial Officer (or such other address as shall be specified in writing by the Warrant Agent or by the Company).

6.4 Governing Law. This Agreement and each Warrant Certificate issued hereunder, and any claim, controversy or dispute arising under or related to this Agreement or any Warrant Certificate, shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of New York.

6.5 Delivery of Prospectus. The Company shall furnish to the Warrant Agent sufficient copies of a prospectus meeting the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, relating to the Warrant Securities deliverable upon exercise of the Warrants (the "*Prospectus*"), and the Warrant Agent agrees that upon the exercise of any Warrant, the Warrant Agent will deliver to the holder of the Warrant Certificate evidencing such Warrant, prior to or concurrently with the delivery of the Warrant Securities issued upon such exercise, a Prospectus.

The Warrant Agent shall not, by reason of any such delivery, assume any responsibility for the accuracy or adequacy of such Prospectus.

6.6 Obtaining of Governmental Approvals. The Company will from time to time take all action which may be necessary to obtain and keep effective any and all permits, consents and approvals of governmental agencies and authorities and securities act filings under United States Federal and state laws (including without limitation a registration statement in respect of the Warrants and Warrant Securities under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended), which may be or become requisite in connection with the issuance, sale, transfer, and delivery of the Warrant Securities issued upon exercise of the Warrants, the issuance, sale, transfer and delivery of the Warrants or upon the expiration of the period during which the Warrants are exercisable.

6.7 Persons Having Rights Under Warrant Agreement. Nothing in this Agreement shall give to any person other than the Company, the Warrant Agent and the holders of the Warrant Certificates any right, remedy or claim under or by reason of this Agreement.

6.8 Headings. The descriptive headings of the several Articles and Sections of this Agreement are inserted for convenience only and shall not control or affect the meaning or construction of any of the provisions hereof.

6.9 Counterparts. This Agreement may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which as so executed shall be deemed to be an original, but such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

6.10 Inspection of Agreement. A copy of this Agreement shall be available at all reasonable times at the principal corporate trust office of the Warrant Agent for inspection by the holder of any Warrant Certificate. The Warrant Agent may require such holder to submit his Warrant Certificate for inspection by it.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Agreement to be duly executed, all as of the day and year first above written.

APTEVO THERAPEUTICS INC.

By: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

[WARRANT AGENT], as Warrant Agent

By: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

[SIGNATURE PAGE TO PREFERRED STOCK WARRANT AGREEMENT]

EXHIBIT A

**FORM OF WARRANT CERTIFICATE
[FACE OF WARRANT CERTIFICATE]**

[[Form if Warrants are attached to Other Securities and are not immediately detachable.]

[Prior to _____, this Warrant Certificate cannot be transferred or exchanged unless attached to a [Title of Other Securities].]

[Form of Legend if Warrants are not immediately exercisable.]

[Prior to _____, Warrants evidenced by this Warrant Certificate cannot be exercised.]

EXERCISABLE ONLY IF COUNTERSIGNED BY THE WARRANT AGENT AS PROVIDED HEREIN

VOID AFTER [] P.M., [] TIME, ON _____,

APTEVO THERAPEUTICS INC.
WARRANT CERTIFICATE REPRESENTING
WARRANTS TO PURCHASE
[TITLE OF WARRANT SECURITIES]

No. _____ Warrants

This certifies that _____ or registered assigns is the registered owner of the above indicated number of Warrants, each Warrant entitling such owner [if Warrants are attached to Other Securities and are not immediately detachable—, subject to the registered owner qualifying as a “Holder” of this Warrant Certificate, as hereinafter defined),] to purchase, at any time [after [_____] p.m., [_____] time, on and] on or before [_____] p.m., [_____] time, on _____ shares of [Title of Warrant Securities] (the “**Warrant Securities**”), of Aptevo Therapeutics Inc. (the “**Company**”) on the following basis: during the period from _____, through and including _____, the exercise price per Warrant Security will be \$_____, subject to adjustment as provided in the Warrant Agreement (as hereinafter defined) (the “**Warrant Price**”). The Holder may exercise the Warrants evidenced hereby by providing certain information set forth on the back hereof and by paying in full, in lawful money of the United States of America, [in cash or by certified check or official bank check in New York Clearing House funds] [by bank wire transfer in immediately available funds], the Warrant Price for each Warrant Security with respect to which this Warrant is exercised to the Warrant Agent (as hereinafter defined) and by surrendering this Warrant Certificate, with the purchase form on the back hereof duly executed, at the corporate trust office of [name of Warrant Agent], or its successor as warrant agent (the “**Warrant Agent**”), which is, on the date hereof, at the address specified on the reverse hereof, and upon compliance with and subject to the conditions set forth herein and in the Warrant Agreement (as hereinafter defined).

The term “Holder” as used herein shall mean [if Warrants are attached to Other Securities and are not immediately detachable—prior to _____ (the “**Detachable Date**”), the registered owner of the Company’s [title of Other Securities] to which this Warrant Certificate was initially attached, and after such Detachable Date,] the person in whose name at the time this Warrant Certificate shall be registered upon the books to be maintained by the Warrant Agent for that purpose pursuant to Section 4 of the Warrant Agreement.

The Warrants evidenced by this Warrant Certificate may be exercised to purchase a whole number of Warrant Securities in registered form. Upon any exercise of fewer than all of the Warrants evidenced by this Warrant Certificate, there shall be issued to the Holder hereof a new Warrant Certificate evidencing Warrants for the number of Warrant Securities remaining unexercised.

This Warrant Certificate is issued under and in accordance with the Warrant Agreement dated as of _____, _____ (the “**Warrant Agreement**”), between the Company and the Warrant Agent and is subject to the terms and provisions contained in the Warrant Agreement, to all of which terms and provisions the Holder of this Warrant Certificate consents by acceptance hereof. Copies of the Warrant Agreement are on file at the above-mentioned office of the Warrant Agent.

DB1/ 117519103.2

[If Warrants are attached to Other Securities and are not immediately detachable – Prior to the Detachable Date, this Warrant Certificate may be exchanged or transferred only together with the [Title of Other Securities] (the “*Other Securities*”) to which this Warrant Certificate was initially attached, and only for the purpose of effecting or in conjunction with, an exchange or transfer of such Other Security. Additionally, on or prior to the Detachable Date, each transfer of such Other Security on the register of the Other Securities shall operate also to transfer this Warrant Certificate. After such date, transfer of this] [If Warrants are attached to Other Securities and are immediately detachable – Transfer of this] Warrant Certificate may be registered when this Warrant Certificate is surrendered at the corporate trust office of the Warrant Agent by the registered owner or such owner’s assigns, in the manner and subject to the limitations provided in the Warrant Agreement.

[If Other Securities with Warrants which are not immediately detachable – Except as provided in the immediately preceding paragraph, after] [If Other Securities with Warrants which are immediately detachable or Warrants alone – After] countersignature by the Warrant Agent and prior to the expiration of this Warrant Certificate, this Warrant Certificate may be exchanged at the corporate trust office of the Warrant Agent for Warrant Certificates representing Warrants for the same aggregate number of Warrant Securities.

This Warrant Certificate shall not entitle the Holder hereof to any of the rights of a holder of the Warrant Securities, including, without limitation, the right to receive payments of dividends or distributions, if any, on the Warrant Securities (except to the extent set forth in the Warrant Agreement) or to exercise any voting rights.

Reference is hereby made to the further provisions of this Warrant Certificate set forth on the reverse hereof, which further provisions shall for all purposes have the same effect as if set forth at this place.

This Warrant Certificate shall not be valid or obligatory for any purpose until countersigned by the Warrant Agent.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Company has caused this Warrant to be executed in its name and on its behalf by the facsimile signatures of its duly authorized officers.

Dated: _____

APTEVO THERAPEUTICS INC.

By: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

Countersigned:

[WARRANT AGENT], as Warrant Agent

By: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

[REVERSE OF WARRANT CERTIFICATE]

(Instructions for Exercise of Warrant)

To exercise any Warrants evidenced hereby for Warrant Securities (as hereinafter defined), the Holder must pay, in lawful money of the United States of America, [in cash or by certified check or official bank check in New York Clearing House funds] [by bank wire transfer in immediately available funds], the Warrant Price in full for Warrants exercised, to [Warrant Agent] [address of Warrant Agent], Attn: _____, which payment must specify the name of the Holder and the number of Warrants exercised by such Holder. In addition, the Holder must complete the information required below and present this Warrant Certificate in person or by mail (certified or registered mail is recommended) to the Warrant Agent at the appropriate address set forth above. This Warrant Certificate, completed and duly executed, must be received by the Warrant Agent within five business days of the payment.

(To be executed upon exercise of Warrants)

The undersigned hereby irrevocably elects to exercise _____ Warrants, evidenced by this Warrant Certificate, to purchase _____ shares of the [Title of Warrant Securities] (the "**Warrant Securities**"), of Aptevo Therapeutics Inc. and represents that he has tendered payment for such Warrant Securities, in lawful money of the United States of America, [in cash or by certified check or official bank check in New York Clearing House funds] [by bank wire transfer in immediately available funds], to the order of Aptevo Therapeutics Inc., c/o [insert name and address of Warrant Agent], in the amount of \$_____ in accordance with the terms hereof. The undersigned requests that said Warrant Securities be in fully registered form in the authorized denominations, registered in such names and delivered all as specified in accordance with the instructions set forth below.

If the number of Warrants exercised is less than all of the Warrants evidenced hereby, the undersigned requests that a new Warrant Certificate evidencing the Warrants for the number of Warrant Securities remaining unexercised be issued and delivered to the undersigned unless otherwise specified in the instructions below.

Dated _____

Name _____

Please Print _____

Address: _____

(Insert Social Security or Other Identifying Number of Holder)

Signature Guaranteed

Signature

(Signature must conform in all respects to name of holder as specified on the face of this Warrant Certificate and must bear a signature guarantee by a FINRA member firm).

This Warrant may be exercised at the following addresses:

By hand at

By mail at

[Instructions as to form and delivery of Warrant Securities and, if applicable, Warrant Certificates evidencing Warrants for the number of Warrant Securities remaining unexercised—complete as appropriate.]

DB1/ 117519103.2

ASSIGNMENT

[Form of assignment to be executed if Warrant Holder desires to transfer Warrant]

FOR VALUE RECEIVED, hereby sells, assigns and transfers unto:

(Please print name and address including zip code)

Please print Social Security or other identifying number

the right represented by the within Warrant to purchase
Therapeutics Inc. to which the within Warrant relates and appoints
Warrant Agent with full power of substitution in the premises.

shares of [Title of Warrant Securities] of Aptevo
attorney to transfer such right on the books of the

Dated _____

Signature _____

(Signature must conform in all respects to name of holder as specified on the face of the Warrant)

Signature Guaranteed

APTEVO THERAPEUTICS INC.
AND

_____, AS WARRANT AGENT
FORM OF DEBT SECURITIES
WARRANT AGREEMENT

DATED AS OF [__], 20__

APTEVO THERAPEUTICS INC.
FORM OF DEBT SECURITIES WARRANT AGREEMENT

DEBT SECURITIES WARRANT AGREEMENT (this “*Agreement*”), dated as of _____ between **APTEVO THERAPEUTICS INC.**, a Delaware corporation (the “*Company*”), and _____, a [corporation] [national banking association] organized and existing under the laws of _____ and having a corporate trust office in _____, as warrant agent (the “*Warrant Agent*”).

WHEREAS, the Company has entered into an indenture dated as of [_____] (the “*Indenture*”), with _____, as trustee (such trustee, and any successors to such trustee, herein called the “*Trustee*”), providing for the issuance from time to time of its debt securities, to be issued in one or more series as provided in the Indenture (the “*Debt Securities*”);

WHEREAS, the Company proposes to sell [If Warrants are sold with other securities—title of such other securities being offered (the “*Other Securities*”) with] warrant certificates evidencing one or more warrants (the “*Warrants*” or, individually, a “*Warrant*”) representing the right to purchase [title of Debt Securities purchasable through exercise of Warrants] (the “*Warrant Debt Securities*”), such warrant certificates and other warrant certificates issued pursuant to this Agreement being herein called the “*Warrant Certificates*,” and

WHEREAS, the Company desires the Warrant Agent to act on behalf of the Company, and the Warrant Agent is willing so to act, in connection with the issuance, registration, transfer, exchange, exercise and replacement of the Warrant Certificates, and in this Agreement wishes to set forth, among other things, the form and provisions of the Warrant Certificates and the terms and conditions on which they may be issued, registered, transferred, exchanged, exercised and replaced.

NOW, THEREFORE, in consideration of the premises and of the mutual agreements herein contained, the parties hereto agree as follows:

ARTICLE 1

ISSUANCE OF WARRANTS AND EXECUTION AND DELIVERY OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES

1.1 Issuance of Warrants. [If Warrants alone—Upon issuance, each Warrant Certificate shall evidence one or more Warrants.] [If Other Securities and Warrants—Warrant Certificates shall be [initially] issued in connection with the issuance of the Other Securities [but shall be separately transferable on and after _____ (the “*Detachable Date*”) [and shall not be separately transferable] and each Warrant Certificate shall evidence one or more Warrants.] Each Warrant evidenced thereby shall represent the right, subject to the provisions contained herein and therein, to purchase one Warrant Debt Security. [If Other Securities and Warrants—Warrant Certificates shall be initially issued in units with the Other Securities and each Warrant Certificate included in such a unit shall evidence _____ Warrants for each [\$ _____ principal amount] [_____ shares] of Other Securities included in such unit].

1.

1.2 Execution and Delivery of Warrant Certificates. Each Warrant Certificate, whenever issued, shall be in registered form substantially in the form set forth in **Exhibit A** hereto, shall be dated the date of its countersignature by the Warrant Agent and may have such letters, numbers, or other marks of identification or designation and such legends or endorsements printed, lithographed or engraved thereon as the officers of the Company executing the same may approve (execution thereof to be conclusive evidence of such approval) and as are not inconsistent with the provisions of this Agreement, or as may be required to comply with any law or with any rule or regulation made pursuant thereto or with any rule or regulation of any securities exchange on which the Warrants may be listed, or to conform to usage. The Warrant Certificates shall be signed on behalf of the Company by any of its present or future chief executive officers, presidents, senior vice presidents, vice presidents, chief financial officers, chief legal officers, treasurers, assistant treasurers, controllers, assistant controllers, secretaries or assistant secretaries under its corporate seal reproduced thereon. Such signatures may be manual or facsimile signatures of such authorized officers and may be imprinted or otherwise reproduced on the Warrant Certificates. The seal of the Company may be in the form of a facsimile thereof and may be impressed, affixed, imprinted or otherwise reproduced on the Warrant Certificates.

No Warrant Certificate shall be valid for any purpose, and no Warrant evidenced thereby shall be exercisable, until such Warrant Certificate has been countersigned by the manual signature of the Warrant Agent. Such signature by the Warrant Agent upon any Warrant Certificate executed by the Company shall be conclusive evidence that the Warrant Certificate so countersigned has been duly issued hereunder.

In case any officer of the Company who shall have signed any of the Warrant Certificates either manually or by facsimile signature shall cease to be such officer before the Warrant Certificates so signed shall have been countersigned and delivered by the Warrant Agent, such Warrant Certificates may be countersigned and delivered notwithstanding that the person who signed Warrant Certificates ceased to be such officer of the Company; and any Warrant Certificate may be signed on behalf of the Company by such persons as, at the actual date of the execution of such Warrant Certificate, shall be the proper officers of the Company, although at the date of the execution of this Agreement any such person was not such officer.

The term “holder” or “holder of a Warrant Certificate” as used herein shall mean any person in whose name at the time any Warrant Certificate shall be registered upon the books to be maintained by the Warrant Agent for that purpose [If Other Securities and Warrants are not immediately detachable—or upon the registration of the Other Securities prior to the Detachable Date. Prior to the Detachable Date, the Company will, or will cause the registrar of the Other Securities to, make available at all times to the Warrant Agent such information as to holders of the Other Securities as may be necessary to keep the Warrant Agent’s records up to date].

1.3 Issuance of Warrant Certificates. Warrant Certificates evidencing the right to purchase Warrant Debt Securities may be executed by the Company and delivered to the Warrant Agent upon the execution of this Warrant Agreement or from time to time thereafter. The Warrant Agent shall, upon receipt of Warrant Certificates duly executed on behalf of the Company, countersign such Warrant Certificates and shall deliver such Warrant Certificates to or upon the order of the Company.

ARTICLE 2

WARRANT PRICE, DURATION AND EXERCISE OF WARRANTS

2.1 Warrant Price. During the period specified in Section 2.2, each Warrant shall, subject to the terms of this Warrant Agreement and the applicable Warrant Certificate, entitle the holder thereof, to purchase the principal amount of Warrant Debt Securities specified in the applicable Warrant Certificate at an exercise price of _____% of the principal amount thereof [plus accrued amortization, if any, of the original issue discount of the Warrant Debt Securities] [plus accrued interest, if any, from the most recent date from which interest shall have been paid on the Warrant Debt Securities or, if no interest shall have been paid on the Warrant Debt Securities, from the date of their initial issuance.] [The original issue discount (\$ _____ for each \$1,000 principal amount of Warrant Debt Securities) will be amortized at a _____% annual rate, computed on a[n] [semi-] annual basis [using a 360-day year consisting of twelve 30-day months].] Such purchase price for the Warrant Debt Securities is referred to in this Agreement as the “*Warrant Price*.”

2.2 Duration of Warrants. Each Warrant may be exercised in whole or in part at any time, as specified herein, on or after [the date thereof] [_____] and at or before [_____] p.m., [City] time, on _____ or such later date as the Company may designate by notice to the Warrant Agent and the holders of Warrant Certificates mailed to their addresses as set forth in the record books of the Warrant Agent (the “*Expiration Date*”). Each Warrant not exercised at or before [_____] p.m., [City] time, on the Expiration Date shall become void, and all rights of the holder of the Warrant Certificate evidencing such Warrant under this Agreement shall cease.

2.3 Exercise Of Warrants.

(a) During the period specified in Section 2.2, the Warrants may be exercised to purchase a whole number of Warrant Debt Securities in registered form by providing certain information as set forth on the reverse side of the Warrant Certificate and by paying in full, in lawful money of the United States of America, [in cash or by certified check or official bank check in New York Clearing House funds] [by bank wire transfer in immediately available funds] the Warrant Price for each Warrant Debt Security with respect to which a Warrant is being exercised to the Warrant Agent at its corporate trust office, provided that such exercise is subject to receipt within five business days of such payment by the Warrant Agent of the Warrant Certificate with the form of election to purchase Warrant Debt Securities set forth on the reverse side of the Warrant Certificate properly completed and duly executed. The date on which payment in full of the Warrant Price is received by the Warrant Agent shall, subject to receipt of the Warrant Certificate as aforesaid, be deemed to be the date on which the Warrant is exercised; provided, however, that if, at the date of receipt of such Warrant Certificates and payment in full of the Warrant Price, the transfer books for the Warrant Debt Securities purchasable upon the exercise of such Warrants shall be closed, no such receipt of such Warrant Certificates and no such payment of such Warrant Price shall be effective to constitute the person so designated to be named as the holder of record of such Warrant Debt Securities on such date, but shall be effective to constitute such person as the holder of record of such Warrant Debt Securities for all purposes at the opening of business on the next succeeding day on which the transfer books for

the Warrant Debt Securities purchasable upon the exercise of such Warrants shall be opened, and the certificates for the Warrant Debt Securities in respect of which such Warrants are then exercised shall be issuable as of the date on such next succeeding day on which the transfer books shall next be opened, and until such date the Company shall be under no duty to deliver any certificate for such Warrant Debt Securities. The Warrant Agent shall deposit all funds received by it in payment of the Warrant Price in an account of the Company maintained with it and shall advise the Company by telephone at the end of each day on which a payment for the exercise of Warrants is received of the amount so deposited to its account. The Warrant Agent shall promptly confirm such telephone advice to the Company in writing.

(b) The Warrant Agent shall, from time to time, as promptly as practicable, advise the Company of (i) the number of Warrant Debt Securities with respect to which Warrants were exercised, (ii) the instructions of each holder of the Warrant Certificates evidencing such Warrants with respect to delivery of the Warrant Debt Securities to which such holder is entitled upon such exercise, (iii) delivery of Warrant Certificates evidencing the balance, if any, of the Warrants for the remaining Warrant Debt Securities after such exercise, and (iv) such other information as the Company or the Trustee shall reasonably require.

(c) As soon as practicable after the exercise of any Warrant, the Company shall issue, pursuant to the Indenture, in authorized denominations, to or upon the order of the holder of the Warrant Certificate evidencing such Warrant, the Warrant Debt Securities to which such holder is entitled, in fully registered form, registered in such name or names as may be directed by such holder. If fewer than all of the Warrants evidenced by such Warrant Certificate are exercised, the Company shall execute, and an authorized officer of the Warrant Agent shall manually countersign and deliver, a new Warrant Certificate evidencing Warrants for the number of Warrant Debt Securities remaining unexercised.

(d) The Company shall not be required to pay any stamp or other tax or other governmental charge required to be paid in connection with any transfer involved in the issue of the Warrant Debt Securities, and in the event that any such transfer is involved, the Company shall not be required to issue or deliver any Warrant Debt Securities until such tax or other charge shall have been paid or it has been established to the Company's satisfaction that no such tax or other charge is due.

(e) Prior to the issuance of any Warrants there shall have been reserved, and the Company shall at all times through the Expiration Date keep reserved, out of its authorized but unissued Warrant Debt Securities, a number of shares sufficient to provide for the exercise of the Warrants.

ARTICLE 3

OTHER PROVISIONS RELATING TO RIGHTS OF HOLDERS OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES

3.1 No Rights As Holders of Warrant Debt Securities Conferred By Warrants or Warrant Certificates. No Warrant Certificate or Warrant evidenced thereby shall entitle the holder thereof to any of the rights of a holder of Warrant Debt Securities, including, without limitation, the right to receive the payment of principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on the Warrant Debt Securities or to enforce any of the covenants in the Indenture.

3.2 Lost, Stolen, Mutilated or Destroyed Warrant Certificates. Upon receipt by the Warrant Agent of evidence reasonably satisfactory to it and the Company of the ownership of and the loss, theft, destruction or mutilation of any Warrant Certificate and/or indemnity reasonably satisfactory to the Warrant Agent and the Company and, in the case of mutilation, upon surrender of the mutilated Warrant Certificate to the Warrant Agent for cancellation, then, in the absence of notice to the Company or the Warrant Agent that such Warrant Certificate has been acquired by a bona fide purchaser, the Company shall execute, and an authorized officer of the Warrant Agent shall manually countersign and deliver, in exchange for or in lieu of the lost, stolen, destroyed or mutilated Warrant Certificate, a new Warrant Certificate of the same tenor and evidencing Warrants for a like principal amount of Warrant Debt Securities. Upon the issuance of any new Warrant Certificate under this Section 3.2, the Company may require the payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto and any other expenses (including the fees and expenses of the Warrant Agent) in connection therewith. Every substitute Warrant Certificate executed and delivered pursuant to this Section 3.2 in lieu of any lost, stolen or destroyed Warrant Certificate shall represent an additional contractual obligation of the Company, whether or not the lost, stolen or destroyed Warrant Certificate shall be at any time enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to the benefits of this Agreement equally and proportionately with any and all other Warrant Certificates duly executed and delivered hereunder. The provisions of this Section 3.2 are exclusive and shall preclude (to the extent lawful) all other rights and remedies with respect to the replacement of mutilated, lost, stolen or destroyed Warrant Certificates.

3.3 Holder Of Warrant Certificate May Enforce Rights. Notwithstanding any of the provisions of this Agreement, any holder of any Warrant Certificate, without the consent of the Warrant Agent, the Trustee, the holder of any Warrant Debt Securities or the holder of any other Warrant Certificate, may, in such holder's own behalf and for such holder's own benefit, enforce, and may institute and maintain any suit, action or proceeding against the Company suitable to enforce, or otherwise in respect of, such holder's right to exercise the Warrants evidenced by such holder's Warrant Certificate in the manner provided in such holder's Warrant Certificates and in this Agreement.

3.4 Merger, Sale, Conveyance or Lease. In case of (a) any share exchange, merger or similar transaction of the Company with or into another person or entity (other than a share exchange, merger or similar transaction in which the Company is the acquiring or surviving corporation) or (b) the sale, exchange, lease, transfer or other disposition of all or substantially all of the properties and assets of the Company as an entirety (in any such case, a “*Reorganization Event*”), then, as a condition of such Reorganization Event, lawful provisions shall be made, and duly executed documents evidencing the same from the Company’s successor shall be delivered to the holders of the Warrants, so that such successor shall succeed to and be substituted for the Company, and assume all the Company’s obligations under, this Agreement and the Warrants. The Company shall thereupon be relieved of any further obligation hereunder or under the Warrants, and the Company as the predecessor corporation may thereupon or at any time thereafter be dissolved, wound up or liquidated. Such successor or assuming entity thereupon may cause to be signed, and may issue either in its own name or in the name of the Company, any or all of the Warrants issuable hereunder which heretofore shall not have been signed by the Company, and may execute and deliver securities in its own name, in fulfillment of its obligations to deliver Warrant Debt Securities upon exercise of the Warrants. All the Warrants so issued shall in all respects have the same legal rank and benefit under this Agreement as the Warrants theretofore or thereafter issued in accordance with the terms of this Agreement as though all of such Warrants had been issued at the date of the execution hereof. In any case of any such Reorganization Event, such changes in phraseology and form (but not in substance) may be made in the Warrants thereafter to be issued as may be appropriate. The Warrant Agent may receive a written opinion of legal counsel as conclusive evidence that any such Reorganization Event complies with the provisions of this Section 3.4.

3.5 Notice To Warrantholders. In case the Company shall (a) effect any Reorganization Event or (b) make any distribution on or in respect of the [title of Warrant Debt Securities] in connection with the dissolution, liquidation or winding up of the Company, then the Company shall mail to each holder of Warrants at such holder’s address as it shall appear on the books of the Warrant Agent, at least ten days prior to the applicable date hereinafter specified, a notice stating the date on which such Reorganization Event, dissolution, liquidation or winding up is expected to become effective, and the date as of which it is expected that holders of [title of Warrant Debt Securities] of record shall be entitled to exchange their shares of [title of Warrant Debt Securities] for securities or other property deliverable upon such Reorganization Event, dissolution, liquidation or winding up. No failure to mail such notice nor any defect therein or in the mailing thereof shall affect any such transaction.

ARTICLE 4

EXCHANGE AND TRANSFER OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES

4.1 Exchange and Transfer of Warrant Certificates. [If Other Securities with Warrants which are immediately detachable—Upon] [If Other Securities with Warrants which are not immediately detachable—Prior to the Detachable Date, a Warrant Certificate may be exchanged or transferred only together with the Other Security to which the Warrant Certificate was initially attached, and only for the purpose of effecting or in conjunction with an exchange or transfer of such Other Security. Prior to any Detachable Date, each transfer of the Other Security shall operate also to transfer the related Warrant Certificates. After the Detachable Date,

upon] surrender at the corporate trust office of the Warrant Agent, Warrant Certificates evidencing Warrants may be exchanged for Warrant Certificates in other denominations evidencing such Warrants or the transfer thereof may be registered in whole or in part; provided that such other Warrant Certificates evidence Warrants for the same aggregate principal amount of Warrant Debt Securities as the Warrant Certificates so surrendered. The Warrant Agent shall keep, at its corporate trust office, books in which, subject to such reasonable regulations as it may prescribe, it shall register Warrant Certificates and exchanges and transfers of outstanding Warrant Certificates, upon surrender of the Warrant Certificates to the Warrant Agent at its corporate trust office for exchange or registration of transfer, properly endorsed or accompanied by appropriate instruments of registration of transfer and written instructions for transfer, all in form satisfactory to the Company and the Warrant Agent. No service charge shall be made for any exchange or registration of transfer of Warrant Certificates, but the Company may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any stamp or other tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in connection with any such exchange or registration of transfer. Whenever any Warrant Certificates are so surrendered for exchange or registration of transfer, an authorized officer of the Warrant Agent shall manually countersign and deliver to the person or persons entitled thereto a Warrant Certificate or Warrant Certificates duly authorized and executed by the Company, as so requested. The Warrant Agent shall not be required to effect any exchange or registration of transfer which will result in the issuance of a Warrant Certificate evidencing a Warrant for a fraction of a Warrant Debt Security or a number of Warrants for a whole number of Warrant Debt Securities and a fraction of a Warrant Debt Security. All Warrant Certificates issued upon any exchange or registration of transfer of Warrant Certificates shall be the valid obligations of the Company, evidencing the same obligations and entitled to the same benefits under this Agreement as the Warrant Certificate surrendered for such exchange or registration of transfer.

4.2 Treatment of Holders of Warrant Certificates. [If Other Securities and Warrants are not immediately detachable—Prior to the Detachable Date, the Company, the Warrant Agent and all other persons may treat the owner of the Other Security as the owner of the Warrant Certificates initially attached thereto for any purpose and as the person entitled to exercise the rights represented by the Warrants evidenced by such Warrant Certificates, any notice to the contrary notwithstanding. After the Detachable Date and prior to due presentment of a Warrant Certificate for registration of transfer, the] [The] Company, the Warrant Agent and all other persons may treat the registered holder of a Warrant Certificate as the absolute owner thereof for any purpose and as the person entitled to exercise the rights represented by the Warrants evidenced thereby, any notice to the contrary notwithstanding.

4.3 Cancellation of Warrant Certificates. Any Warrant Certificate surrendered for exchange, registration of transfer or exercise of the Warrants evidenced thereby shall, if surrendered to the Company, be delivered to the Warrant Agent and all Warrant Certificates surrendered or so delivered to the Warrant Agent shall be promptly canceled by the Warrant Agent and shall not be reissued and, except as expressly permitted by this Agreement, no Warrant Certificate shall be issued hereunder in exchange therefor or in lieu thereof. The Warrant Agent shall deliver to the Company from time to time or otherwise dispose of canceled Warrant Certificates in a manner satisfactory to the Company.

ARTICLE 5

CONCERNING THE WARRANT AGENT

5.1 Warrant Agent. The Company hereby appoints _____ as Warrant Agent of the Company in respect of the Warrants and the Warrant Certificates upon the terms and subject to the conditions herein set forth, and _____ hereby accepts such appointment. The Warrant Agent shall have the powers and authority granted to and conferred upon it in the Warrant Certificates and hereby and such further powers and authority to act on behalf of the Company as the Company may hereafter grant to or confer upon it. All of the terms and provisions with respect to such powers and authority contained in the Warrant Certificates are subject to and governed by the terms and provisions hereof.

5.2 Conditions of Warrant Agent's Obligations. The Warrant Agent accepts its obligations herein set forth upon the terms and conditions hereof, including the following to all of which the Company agrees and to all of which the rights hereunder of the holders from time to time of the Warrant Certificates shall be subject:

(a) **Compensation and Indemnification.** The Company agrees promptly to pay the Warrant Agent the compensation to be agreed upon with the Company for all services rendered by the Warrant Agent and to reimburse the Warrant Agent for reasonable out-of-pocket expenses (including reasonable counsel fees) incurred without negligence, bad faith or willful misconduct by the Warrant Agent in connection with the services rendered hereunder by the Warrant Agent. The Company also agrees to indemnify the Warrant Agent for, and to hold it harmless against, any loss, liability or expense incurred without negligence, bad faith or willful misconduct on the part of the Warrant Agent, arising out of or in connection with its acting as Warrant Agent hereunder, including the reasonable costs and expenses of defending against any claim of such liability.

(b) **Agent for the Company.** In acting under this Warrant Agreement and in connection with the Warrant Certificates, the Warrant Agent is acting solely as agent of the Company and does not assume any obligations or relationship of agency or trust for or with any of the holders of Warrant Certificates or beneficial owners of Warrants.

(c) **Counsel.** The Warrant Agent may consult with counsel satisfactory to it, which may include counsel for the Company, and the written advice of such counsel shall be full and complete authorization and protection in respect of any action taken, suffered or omitted by it hereunder in good faith and in accordance with the advice of such counsel.

(d) **Documents.** The Warrant Agent shall be protected and shall incur no liability for or in respect of any action taken or omitted by it in reliance upon any Warrant Certificate, notice, direction, consent, certificate, affidavit, statement or other paper or document reasonably believed by it to be genuine and to have been presented or signed by the proper parties.

(e) **Certain Transactions.** The Warrant Agent, and its officers, directors and employees, may become the owner of, or acquire any interest in, Warrants, with the same rights that it or they would have if it were not the Warrant Agent hereunder, and, to the extent permitted by applicable law, it or they may engage or be interested in any financial or other transaction with the Company and may act on, or as depositary, trustee or agent for, any committee or body of holders of Warrant Debt Securities or other obligations of the Company as freely as if it were not the Warrant Agent hereunder. Nothing in this Warrant Agreement shall be deemed to prevent the Warrant Agent from acting as Trustee under the Indenture.

(f) **No Liability for Interest.** Unless otherwise agreed with the Company, the Warrant Agent shall have no liability for interest on any monies at any time received by it pursuant to any of the provisions of this Agreement or of the Warrant Certificates.

(g) **No Liability for Invalidity.** The Warrant Agent shall have no liability with respect to any invalidity of this Agreement or any of the Warrant Certificates (except as to the Warrant Agent's countersignature thereon).

(h) **No Responsibility for Representations.** The Warrant Agent shall not be responsible for any of the recitals or representations herein or in the Warrant Certificates (except as to the Warrant Agent's countersignature thereon), all of which are made solely by the Company.

(i) **No Implied Obligations.** The Warrant Agent shall be obligated to perform only such duties as are herein and in the Warrant Certificates specifically set forth and no implied duties or obligations shall be read into this Agreement or the Warrant Certificates against the Warrant Agent. The Warrant Agent shall not be under any obligation to take any action hereunder which may tend to involve it in any expense or liability, the payment of which within a reasonable time is not, in its reasonable opinion, assured to it. The Warrant Agent shall not be accountable or under any duty or responsibility for the use by the Company of any of the Warrant Certificates authenticated by the Warrant Agent and delivered by it to the Company pursuant to this Agreement or for the application by the Company of the proceeds of the Warrant Certificates. The Warrant Agent shall have no duty or responsibility in case of any default by the Company in the performance of its covenants or agreements contained herein or in the Warrant Certificates or in the case of the receipt of any written demand from a holder of a Warrant Certificate with respect to such default, including, without limiting the generality of the foregoing, any duty or responsibility to initiate or attempt to initiate any proceedings at law or otherwise or, except as provided in Section 6.2 hereof, to make any demand upon the Company.

5.3 Resignation, Removal and Appointment of Successors.

(a) The Company agrees, for the benefit of the holders from time to time of the Warrant Certificates, that there shall at all times be a Warrant Agent hereunder until all the Warrants have been exercised or are no longer exercisable.

(b) The Warrant Agent may at any time resign as agent by giving written notice to the Company of such intention on its part, specifying the date on which its desired resignation shall become effective; provided that such date shall not be less than three months after the date on which such notice is given unless the Company otherwise agrees. The Warrant Agent hereunder may be removed at any time by the filing with it of an instrument in writing signed by or on behalf of the Company and specifying such removal and the intended date when it shall become effective. Such resignation or removal shall take effect upon the appointment by the Company, as hereinafter provided, of a successor Warrant Agent (which shall be a bank or trust company authorized under the laws of the jurisdiction of its organization to exercise corporate trust powers) and the acceptance of such appointment by such successor Warrant Agent. The obligation of the Company under Section 5.2(a) shall continue to the extent set forth therein notwithstanding the resignation or removal of the Warrant Agent.

(c) In case at any time the Warrant Agent shall resign, or shall be removed, or shall become incapable of acting, or shall be adjudged a bankrupt or insolvent, or shall commence a voluntary case under the Federal bankruptcy laws, as now or hereafter constituted, or under any other applicable Federal or state bankruptcy, insolvency or similar law or shall consent to the appointment of or taking possession by a receiver, custodian, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator (or other similar official) of the Warrant Agent or its property or affairs, or shall make an assignment for the benefit of creditors, or shall admit in writing its inability to pay its debts generally as they become due, or shall take corporate action in furtherance of any such action, or a decree or order for relief by a court having jurisdiction in the premises shall have been entered in respect of the Warrant Agent in an involuntary case under the Federal bankruptcy laws, as now or hereafter constituted, or any other applicable Federal or state bankruptcy, insolvency or similar law, or a decree or order by a court having jurisdiction in the premises shall have been entered for the appointment of a receiver, custodian, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator (or similar official) of the Warrant Agent or of its property or affairs, or any public officer shall take charge or control of the Warrant Agent or of its property or affairs for the purpose of rehabilitation, conservation, winding up or liquidation, a successor Warrant Agent, qualified as aforesaid, shall be appointed by the Company by an instrument in writing, filed with the successor Warrant Agent. Upon the appointment as aforesaid of a successor Warrant Agent and acceptance by the successor Warrant Agent of such appointment, the Warrant Agent shall cease to be Warrant Agent hereunder.

(d) Any successor Warrant Agent appointed hereunder shall execute, acknowledge and deliver to its predecessor and to the Company an instrument accepting such appointment hereunder, and thereupon such successor Warrant Agent, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the authority, rights, powers, trusts, immunities, duties and obligations of such predecessor with like effect as if originally named as Warrant Agent hereunder, and such predecessor, upon payment of its charges and disbursements then unpaid, shall thereupon become obligated to transfer, deliver and pay over, and such successor Warrant Agent shall be entitled to receive, all monies, securities and other property on deposit with or held by such predecessor, as Warrant Agent hereunder.

(e) Any corporation into which the Warrant Agent hereunder may be merged or converted or any corporation with which the Warrant Agent may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which the Warrant Agent shall be a party, or any corporation to which the Warrant Agent shall sell or otherwise transfer all or substantially all the assets and business of the Warrant Agent, provided that it shall be qualified as aforesaid, shall be the successor Warrant Agent under this Agreement without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of any of the parties hereto.

ARTICLE 6

MISCELLANEOUS

6.1 Amendment. This Agreement may be amended by the parties hereto, without the consent of the holder of any Warrant Certificate, for the purpose of curing any ambiguity, or of curing, correcting or supplementing any defective provision contained herein, or making any other provisions with respect to matters or questions arising under this Agreement as the Company and the Warrant Agent may deem necessary or desirable; provided that such action shall not materially adversely affect the interests of the holders of the Warrant Certificates.

6.2 Notices and Demands to the Company and Warrant Agent. If the Warrant Agent shall receive any notice or demand addressed to the Company by the holder of a Warrant Certificate pursuant to the provisions of the Warrant Certificates, the Warrant Agent shall promptly forward such notice or demand to the Company.

6.3 Addresses. Any communication from the Company to the Warrant Agent with respect to this Agreement shall be addressed to _____, Attention: _____ and any communication from the Warrant Agent to the Company with respect to this Agreement shall be addressed to Aptevo Therapeutics Inc., 2401 4th Avenue, Suite 1050, Seattle, WA 98121, Attention: Chief Financial Officer (or such other address as shall be specified in writing by the Warrant Agent or by the Company).

6.4 Governing Law. This Agreement and each Warrant Certificate issued hereunder, and any claim, controversy or dispute arising under or related to this Agreement or any Warrant Certificate, shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of New York.

6.5 Delivery Of Prospectus. The Company shall furnish to the Warrant Agent sufficient copies of a prospectus meeting the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, relating to the Warrant Debt Securities deliverable upon exercise of the Warrants (the "*Prospectus*"), and the Warrant Agent agrees that upon the exercise of any Warrant, the Warrant Agent will deliver to the holder of the Warrant Certificate evidencing such Warrant, prior to or concurrently with the delivery of the Warrant Debt Securities issued upon such exercise, a Prospectus. The Warrant Agent shall not, by reason of any such delivery, assume any responsibility for the accuracy or adequacy of such Prospectus.

6.6 Obtaining of Governmental Approvals. The Company will from time to time take all action which may be necessary to obtain and keep effective any and all permits, consents and approvals of governmental agencies and authorities and securities act filings under United States Federal and state laws (including without limitation a registration statement in respect of the Warrants and Warrant Debt Securities under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended), which may be or become requisite in connection with the issuance, sale, transfer, and delivery of the Warrant Debt Securities issued upon exercise of the Warrants, the issuance, sale, transfer and delivery of the Warrants or upon the expiration of the period during which the Warrants are exercisable.

6.7 Persons Having Rights Under Warrant Agreement. Nothing in this Agreement shall give to any person other than the Company, the Warrant Agent and the holders of the Warrant Certificates any right, remedy or claim under or by reason of this Agreement.

6.8 Headings. The descriptive headings of the several Articles and Sections of this Agreement are inserted for convenience only and shall not control or affect the meaning or construction of any of the provisions hereof.

6.9 Counterparts. This Agreement may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which as so executed shall be deemed to be an original, but such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

6.10 Inspection of Agreement. A copy of this Agreement shall be available at all reasonable times at the principal corporate trust office of the Warrant Agent for inspection by the holder of any Warrant Certificate. The Warrant Agent may require such holder to submit his Warrant Certificate for inspection by it.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Agreement to be duly executed, all as of the day and year first above written.

APTEVO THERAPEUTICS INC.

By: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

[WARRANT AGENT], as Warrant Agent

By: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

[SIGNATURE PAGE TO DEBT SECURITIES WARRANT AGREEMENT]

EXHIBIT A

**FORM OF WARRANT CERTIFICATE
[FACE OF WARRANT CERTIFICATE]**

[Form if Warrants are attached to Other Securities and are not immediately detachable.]

[Prior to _____, this Warrant Certificate cannot be transferred or exchanged unless attached to a [Title of Other Securities].]

[Form of Legend if Warrants are not immediately exercisable.]

[Prior to _____, Warrants evidenced by this Warrant Certificate cannot be exercised.]

EXERCISABLE ONLY IF COUNTERSIGNED BY THE WARRANT AGENT AS PROVIDED HEREIN

VOID AFTER [] P.M., [] TIME, ON _____,

APTEVO THERAPEUTICS INC.
WARRANT CERTIFICATE REPRESENTING
WARRANTS TO PURCHASE
[TITLE OF WARRANT DEBT SECURITIES]

No. _____

Warrants

This certifies that _____ or registered assigns is the registered owner of the above indicated number of Warrants, each Warrant entitling such owner [If Warrants are attached to Other Securities and are not immediately detachable —, subject to the registered owner qualifying as a “Holder” of this Warrant Certificate (as hereinafter defined)] to purchase, at any time [after [_____] p.m., [City] time, on and] on or before [_____] p.m., [City] time, on _____, \$____ principal amount of [Title of Warrant Debt Securities] (the “*Warrant Debt Securities*”), of Aptevo Therapeutics Inc. (the “*Company*”), issued or to be issued under the Indenture (as hereinafter defined), on the following basis: during the period from _____, through and including _____, each Warrant shall entitle the Holder thereof, subject to the provisions of this Agreement, to purchase the principal amount of Warrant Debt Securities stated in the Warrant Certificate at the warrant price (the “*Warrant Price*”) of ____% of the principal amount thereof [plus accrued amortization, if any, of the original issue discount of the Warrant Debt Securities] [plus accrued interest, if any, from the most recent date from which interest shall have been paid on the Warrant Debt Securities or, if no interest shall have been paid on the Warrant Debt Securities, from the date of their original issuance]. [The original issue discount (\$_____ for each \$1,000 principal amount of Warrant Debt Securities) will be amortized at a ____% annual rate, computed on a[n] [semi-]annual basis [using a 360-day year consisting of twelve 30-day months]]. The Holder may exercise the Warrants evidenced hereby by providing certain information set forth on the back hereof and by paying in full, in lawful money of the United States of America, [in cash or by certified check or official bank check in New York Clearing House funds] [by bank wire transfer in immediately available funds], the Warrant Price for each Warrant Debt Security with respect to which this Warrant is exercised to the Warrant Agent (as hereinafter defined) and by surrendering this Warrant Certificate, with the purchase form on the back hereof duly executed, at the corporate trust office of [name of Warrant Agent], or its successor as warrant agent (the “*Warrant Agent*”), which is, on the date hereof, at the address specified on the reverse hereof, and upon compliance with and subject to the conditions set forth herein and in the Warrant Agreement (as hereinafter defined).

The term “Holder” as used herein shall mean [If Warrants are attached to Other Securities and are not immediately detachable—, prior to _____, _____ (the “*Detachable Date*”), the registered owner of the Company’s [title of Other Securities] to which this Warrant Certificate was initially attached, and after such Detachable Date,] the person in whose name at the time this Warrant Certificate shall be registered upon the books to be maintained by the Warrant Agent for that purpose pursuant to Section 4 of the Warrant Agreement.

The Warrants evidenced by this Warrant Certificate may be exercised to purchase Warrant Debt Securities in the principal amount of \$1,000 or any integral multiple thereof in registered form. Upon any exercise of fewer than all of the Warrants evidenced by this Warrant Certificate, there shall be issued to the Holder hereof a new Warrant Certificate evidencing Warrants for the aggregate principal amount of Warrant Debt Securities remaining unexercised.

This Warrant Certificate is issued under and in accordance with the Warrant Agreement dated as of _____, _____ (the "**Warrant Agreement**"), between the Company and the Warrant Agent and is subject to the terms and provisions contained in the Warrant Agreement, to all of which terms and provisions the Holder of this Warrant Certificate consents by acceptance hereof. Copies of the Warrant Agreement are on file at the above-mentioned office of the Warrant Agent.

The Warrant Debt Securities to be issued and delivered upon the exercise of Warrants evidenced by this Warrant Certificate will be issued under and in accordance with an Indenture, dated as of _____, _____ (the "**Indenture**"), between the Company and _____, as trustee (such trustee, and any successors to such trustee, the "**Trustee**") and will be subject to the terms and provisions contained in the Warrant Debt Securities and in the Indenture. Copies of the Indenture, including the form of the Warrant Debt Securities, are on file at the corporate trust office of the Trustee.

[If Warrants are attached to Other Securities and are not immediately detachable—Prior to the Detachable Date, this Warrant Certificate may be exchanged or transferred only together with the [Title of Other Securities] (the "**Other Securities**") to which this Warrant Certificate was initially attached, and only for the purpose of effecting or in conjunction with, an exchange or transfer of such Other Security. Additionally, on or prior to the Detachable Date, each transfer of such Other Security on the register of the Other Securities shall operate also to transfer this Warrant Certificate. After such date, transfer of this] [If Warrants are attached to Other Securities and are immediately detachable—Transfer of this] Warrant Certificate may be registered when this Warrant Certificate is surrendered at the corporate trust office of the Warrant Agent by the registered owner or such owner's assigns, in the manner and subject to the limitations provided in the Warrant Agreement.

[If Other Securities with Warrants which are not immediately detachable—Except as provided in the immediately preceding paragraph, after] [If Other Securities with Warrants which are immediately detachable or Warrants alone—After] countersignature by the Warrant Agent and prior to the expiration of this Warrant Certificate, this Warrant Certificate may be exchanged at the corporate trust office of the Warrant Agent for Warrant Certificates representing Warrants for the same aggregate principal amount of Warrant Debt Securities.

This Warrant Certificate shall not entitle the Holder hereof to any of the rights of a holder of the Warrant Debt Securities, including, without limitation, the right to receive payments of principal of (and premium, if any) or interest, if any, on the Warrant Debt Securities or to enforce any of the covenants of the Indenture.

Reference is hereby made to the further provisions of this Warrant Certificate set forth on the reverse hereof, which further provisions shall for all purposes have the same effect as if set forth at this place.

This Warrant Certificate shall not be valid or obligatory for any purpose until countersigned by the Warrant Agent.

DB1/ 117519149.2

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Company has caused this Warrant to be executed in its name and on its behalf by the facsimile signatures of its duly authorized officers.

Dated: _____

APTEVO THERAPEUTICS INC.

By: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

Countersigned:

[WARRANT AGENT], as Warrant Agent

By: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

[REVERSE OF WARRANT CERTIFICATE]

(Instructions for Exercise of Warrant)

To exercise any Warrants evidenced hereby for Warrant Debt Securities (as hereinafter defined), the Holder must pay, in lawful money of the United States of America, [in cash or by certified check or official bank check in New York Clearing House funds] [by bank wire transfer in immediately available funds], the Warrant Price in full for Warrants exercised, to [Warrant Agent] [address of Warrant Agent], Attn: _____, which payment must specify the name of the Holder and the number of Warrants exercised by such Holder. In addition, the Holder must complete the information required below and present this Warrant Certificate in person or by mail (certified or registered mail is recommended) to the Warrant Agent at the appropriate address set forth above. This Warrant Certificate, completed and duly executed, must be received by the Warrant Agent within five business days of the payment.

(To be executed upon exercise of Warrants)

The undersigned hereby irrevocably elects to exercise _____ Warrants, represented by this Warrant Certificate, to purchase \$_____ principal amount of the [Title of Warrant Debt Securities] (the "**Warrant Debt Securities**") of Aptevo Therapeutics Inc. and represents that he has tendered payment for such Warrant Debt Securities, in lawful money of the United States of America, [in cash or by certified check or official bank check in New York Clearing House funds] [by bank wire transfer in immediately available funds], to the order of Aptevo Therapeutics Inc., c/o [insert name and address of Warrant Agent], in the amount of \$_____ in accordance with the terms hereof. The undersigned requests that said principal amount of Warrant Debt Securities be in fully registered form in the authorized denominations, registered in such names and delivered all as specified in accordance with the instructions set forth below.

If the number of Warrants exercised is less than all the Warrants evidenced hereby, the undersigned requests that a new Warrant Certificate evidencing the Warrants for the aggregate principal amount of Warrant Debt Securities remaining unexercised be issued and delivered to the undersigned unless otherwise specified in the instructions below.

Dated _____

Name _____

Please Print _____

Address: _____

(Insert Social Security or Other Identifying Number of Holder)

Signature Guaranteed

Signature

(Signature must conform in all respects to name of holder as specified on the face of this Warrant Certificate and must bear a signature guarantee by a FINRA member firm).

This Warrant may be exercised at the following addresses:

By hand at

By mail at

[Instructions as to form and delivery of Warrant Debt Securities and, if applicable, Warrant Certificates evidencing Warrants for the number of Warrant Debt Securities remaining unexercised—complete as appropriate.]

DB1/ 117519149.2

ASSIGNMENT

[Form of assignment to be executed if Warrant Holder desires to transfer Warrant]

FOR VALUE RECEIVED, hereby sells, assigns and transfers unto:

(Please print name and address including zip code)

Please print Social Security or other identifying number

the right represented by the within Warrant to purchase \$ aggregate principal amount of [Title of Warrant Debt Securities]
of Aptevo Therapeutics Inc. to which the within Warrant relates and appoints attorney to transfer such right on the
books of the Warrant Agent with full power of substitution in the premises.

Dated _____

Signature _____

(Signature must conform in all respects to name of holder as specified on the face of the Warrant)

Signature Guaranteed

December 14, 2020

Aptevo Therapeutics Inc.
2401 4th Avenue, Suite 1050
Seattle, WA 98121

Re: Aptevo Therapeutics Inc., Registration Statement on Form S-3 (File No. 333-)

Ladies and Gentlemen:

We have acted as counsel for Aptevo Therapeutics Inc., a Delaware corporation (the “Company”), in connection with the filing of a Registration Statement on Form S-3 (the “Registration Statement”) by the Company under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “Securities Act”). The Registration Statement includes two prospectuses: (i) a base prospectus (the “Base Prospectus”) and (ii) a sales agreement prospectus (the “Equity Distribution Agreement Prospectus”), covering up to \$50,000,000 of shares of common stock, par value \$0.001 per share, of the Company (“Common Stock”) that may be sold under the Equity Distribution Agreement, dated December 14, 2020, between the Company and Piper Jaffray & Co. (such agreement, the “Equity Distribution Agreement,” and such shares, the “Equity Distribution Agreement Shares”). The Base Prospectus provides that it will be supplemented in the future by one or more prospectus supplements (each, a “Prospectus Supplement”). The Registration Statement, including the Base Prospectus (as supplemented from time to time by one or more Prospectus Supplements) and the Equity Distribution Agreement Prospectus will provide for the registration by the Company of:

- shares of Common Stock (the “Base Prospectus Shares”);
- shares of preferred stock, par value \$0.001 per share, of the Company (the “Preferred Stock”);
- debt securities, in one or more series (the “Debt Securities”), which may be issued pursuant to an indenture to be dated on or about the date of the first issuance of Debt Securities thereunder, by and between a trustee to be selected by the Company (the “Trustee”) and the Company, in the form filed as Exhibit 4.9 to the Registration Statement, and one or more indentures supplemental thereto with respect to any particular series of Debt Securities (the “Indenture”);
- warrants to purchase Common Stock, Preferred Stock or Debt Securities (the “Warrants”), which may be issued under one or more warrant agreements, to be dated on or about the date of the first issuance of the Warrants thereunder, by and between a warrant agent to be selected by the Company (the “Warrant Agent”) and the Company, in the forms filed as Exhibits 4.12, 4.13 and 4.14 to the Registration Statement, respectively (each, a “Warrant Agreement”); and
- the Equity Distribution Agreement Shares.

The Common Stock, the Preferred Stock, the Debt Securities, the Warrants, and the Equity Distribution Agreement Shares are collectively referred to herein as the “Securities.” The Securities are being registered for offer and sale from time to time pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act.

In connection with this opinion, we have examined and relied upon originals, or copies certified to our satisfaction, of such records, documents, certificates, opinions, memoranda and other instruments as in our judgment are necessary or appropriate to enable us to render the opinion expressed below. As to certain factual matters, we have relied upon a certificate of an officer of the Company and have not independently verified such matters.

DB1/ 117469406.3

In rendering this opinion, we have assumed the genuineness and authenticity of all signatures on original documents; the authenticity of all documents submitted to us as originals; the conformity to originals of all documents submitted to us as copies; the accuracy, completeness and authenticity of certificates of public officials; and the due authorization, execution and delivery of all documents where authorization, execution and delivery are prerequisites to the effectiveness of such documents.

With respect to our opinion as to the Base Prospectus Shares, we have assumed that, at the time of issuance and sale, a sufficient number of shares of Common Stock are authorized and available for issuance and that the consideration for the issuance and sale of the Base Prospectus Shares (or Preferred Stock or Debt Securities convertible into, or Warrants exercisable for, Common Stock) is in an amount that is not less than the par value of the Common Stock.

With respect to our opinion as to the Preferred Stock, we have assumed that, at the time of issuance and sale, a sufficient number of shares of Preferred Stock are authorized, designated and available for issuance and that the consideration for the issuance and sale of the Preferred Stock (or Debt Securities convertible into, or Warrants exercisable for, Preferred Stock) is in an amount that is not less than the par value of the Preferred Stock. We have also assumed that any Debt Securities or Warrants offered under the Registration Statement and the related Indenture and Warrant Agreement, as applicable, will be executed in the applicable forms filed as exhibits to the Registration Statement or incorporated by reference therein. We have also assumed that (i) with respect to Securities issuable upon conversion of any convertible Preferred Stock, such convertible Preferred Stock has been duly authorized, validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable; and (ii) with respect to any Securities issuable upon conversion of any convertible Debt Securities or upon exercise of any Warrants, such convertible Debt Securities or Warrants, respectively, constitute valid and legally binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms, except as enforcement may be limited by applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, arrangement, moratorium or other similar laws affecting creditors' rights, and subject to general equity principles and to limitations on availability of equitable relief, including specific performance. With respect to the Equity Distribution Agreement Shares, we have assumed that the specific sale of the Equity Distribution Agreement Shares will be duly authorized by the Board of Directors of the Company, a duly authorized committee thereof or a person or body pursuant to an authorization granted in accordance with the General Corporation Law of the State of Delaware (the "DGCL").

Our opinion herein is expressed solely with respect to the DGCL and, as to the Debt Securities and the Warrants constituting valid and legally binding obligations of the Company, the laws of the State of New York. Our opinion is based on these laws as in effect on the date hereof. We express no opinion to the extent that any other laws are applicable to the subject matter hereof and express no opinion and provide no assurance as to compliance with any federal or state securities law, rule or regulation.

On the basis of the foregoing and in reliance thereon, and subject to the qualifications herein stated, we are of the opinion that:

1. With respect to the Base Prospectus Shares offered under the Registration Statement, provided that (i) the Registration Statement and any required post-effective amendment thereto have become effective under the Securities Act and the Base Prospectus and any and all Prospectus Supplement(s) required by applicable laws have been delivered and filed as required by such laws; (ii) the issuance of the Base Prospectus Shares has been duly authorized by all necessary corporate action on the part of the Company; (iii) the issuance and sale of the Base Prospectus Shares do not violate any applicable law, are in

conformity with the Company's then operative certificate of incorporation (the "Certificate of Incorporation") and bylaws (the "Bylaws"), do not result in a default under or breach of any agreement or instrument binding upon the Company, and comply with any applicable requirement or restriction imposed by any court or governmental body having jurisdiction over the Company; and (iv) the certificates, if any, for the Base Prospectus Shares have been duly executed by the Company, countersigned by the transfer agent therefor, and duly delivered to the purchasers thereof against payment therefor, then the Base Prospectus Shares, when issued and sold as contemplated in the Registration Statement, the Base Prospectus and the related Prospectus Supplement(s), and in accordance with a duly authorized, executed and delivered purchase, underwriting or similar agreement, or upon conversion of any convertible Preferred Stock, or convertible Debt Securities in accordance with their terms, or upon exercise of any Warrants in accordance with their terms, will be duly authorized, validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable.

2. With respect to the Preferred Stock offered under the Registration Statement, provided that (i) the Registration Statement and any required post-effective amendment thereto have become effective under the Securities Act and the Base Prospectus and any and all Prospectus Supplement(s) required by applicable laws have been delivered and filed as required by such laws; (ii) the terms and issuance of the Preferred Stock have been duly authorized by all necessary corporate action on the part of the Company; (iii) the terms of the shares of Preferred Stock and their issuance and sale do not violate any applicable law, are in conformity with the Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws, do not result in a default under or breach of any agreement or instrument binding upon the Company, and comply with any applicable requirement or restriction imposed by any court or governmental body having jurisdiction over the Company; and (iv) the certificates, if any, for the Preferred Stock have been duly executed by the Company, countersigned by the transfer agent therefor, and duly delivered to the purchasers thereof against payment therefor, then the Preferred Stock, when issued and sold as contemplated in the Registration Statement, the Base Prospectus and the related Prospectus Supplement(s) and in accordance with a duly authorized, executed and delivered purchase, underwriting or similar agreement, or upon conversion of any convertible Debt Securities in accordance with their terms, or upon exercise of any Warrants in accordance with their terms, will be duly authorized, validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable.

3. With respect to any series of the Debt Securities issued under the Indenture and offered under the Registration Statement, provided that (i) the Registration Statement and any required post-effective amendment thereto have become effective under the Securities Act and the Base Prospectus and any and all Prospectus Supplement(s) required by applicable laws have been delivered and filed as required by such laws; (ii) the Indenture has been duly authorized by the Company and the Trustee by all necessary corporate action; (iii) the Indenture, in substantially the form filed as an exhibit to the Registration Statement, has been duly executed and delivered by the Company and the Trustee and has been qualified under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended; (iv) the issuance and terms of the Debt Securities have been duly authorized by the Company by all necessary corporate action; (v) the terms of the Debt Securities and of their issuance and sale have been duly established in conformity with the Indenture so as not to violate any applicable law or result in a default under or breach of any agreement or instrument binding upon the Company, so as to be in conformity with the Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws, and so as to comply with any requirement or restriction imposed by any court or governmental body having jurisdiction over the Company; and (vi) the notes representing the Debt Securities have been duly executed and delivered by the Company and authenticated by the Trustee pursuant to the Indenture and delivered against payment therefor, then the Debt Securities, when issued and sold in accordance with the Indenture and a duly authorized, executed and delivered purchase, underwriting or similar agreement, or

upon exercise of any Warrants in accordance with their terms, will be valid and legally binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms, except as enforcement thereof may be limited by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium or other similar laws relating to or affecting creditors' rights generally, and by general equitable principles (regardless of whether such enforceability is considered in a proceeding at law or in equity).

4. With respect to the Warrants issued under the Warrant Agreements and offered under the Registration Statement, provided that (i) the Registration Statement and any required post-effective amendment thereto have become effective under the Securities Act and the Base Prospectus and any and all Prospectus Supplement(s) required by applicable laws have been delivered and filed as required by such laws; (ii) the Warrant Agreement has been duly authorized by the Company and the Warrant Agent by all necessary corporate action; (iii) the Warrant Agreement has been duly executed and delivered by the Company and the Warrant Agent; (iv) the issuance and terms of the Warrants have been duly authorized by the Company by all necessary corporate action; (v) the terms of the Warrants and of their issuance and sale have been duly established in conformity with the Warrant Agreement and as described in the Registration Statement, the Base Prospectus and the related Prospectus Supplement(s), so as not to violate any applicable law or result in a default under or breach of any agreement or instrument binding upon the Company, so as to be in conformity with the Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws, and so as to comply with any requirement or restriction imposed by any court or governmental body having jurisdiction over the Company; and (vi) the Warrants have been duly executed and delivered by the Company and authenticated by the Warrant Agent pursuant to the Warrant Agreement and delivered against payment therefor, then the Warrants, when issued and sold as contemplated in the Registration Statement, the Base Prospectus and the Prospectus Supplement(s) and in accordance with the Warrant Agreement and a duly authorized, executed and delivered purchase, underwriting or similar agreement, will be valid and legally binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms, except as enforcement thereof may be limited by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium or other similar laws relating to or affecting creditors' rights generally, and by general equitable principles (regardless of whether such enforceability is considered in a proceeding at law or in equity).

5. With respect to the Equity Distribution Agreement Shares, when issued and paid for in accordance with the Equity Distribution Agreement and provided in the Equity Distribution Agreement Prospectus, the Equity Distribution Agreement Shares will be validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable.

We hereby consent to the filing of this opinion as an exhibit to the Registration Statement and to the reference to our firm under the caption "Legal Matters" in the Base Prospectus and the Equity Distribution Agreement Prospectus included in the Registration Statement. Our opinion set forth above is limited to the matters expressly set forth in this letter, and no opinion is implied or may be inferred beyond the matters expressly stated. This opinion speaks only as to law and facts in effect or existing as of the date hereof, and we undertake no obligation or responsibility to update or supplement this opinion to reflect any facts or circumstances that may hereafter come to our attention or any changes in law that may hereafter occur.

Very truly yours,

/s/ Morgan, Lewis & Bockius LLP

Consent of Ernst & Young LLP, Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

We consent to the reference to our firm under the caption "Experts" in this Registration Statement (Form S-3) and related Prospectus of Aptevo Therapeutics Inc. for the registration of up to \$200 million in common stock, preferred stock, debt securities, and warrants and to the incorporation by reference therein of our report dated March 25, 2020, except for the effects of presenting Aptevo BioTherapeutics LLC as discontinued operations discussed in Note 14 and the effects of the reverse stock split discussed in Note 1, as to which the date is December 14, 2020, with respect to the consolidated financial statements of Aptevo Therapeutics Inc. included in its Current Report (Form 8-K) filed on December 14, 2020 with the Securities and Exchange Commission.

/s/ Ernst & Young LLP

Seattle, Washington
December 14, 2020